

A NEW
METHOD,
AND
Extraordinary INVENTION,
TO DRESS
HORSES,

And work them according to NATURE:
As also, To perfect NATURE by the Subtily of
ART; Which was never found out, but by The

Thrice Noble, High, and Puissant PRINCE

WILLIAM CAVENDISHE,

Duke, Marquess, and Earl of *Newcastle*; Earl of *Ogle*;
Viscount *Mansfield*; and Baron of *Bolsover*, of *Ogle*, of *Bertram*,
Botbal, and *Hepple*: Gentleman of His Majesty's Bed-chamber;
One of His Majesty's most Honourable Privy-Council; Knight
of the most Noble Order of the Garter; His Majesty's Lieute-
nant of the County and Town of *Nottingham*; and Justice in *Ayre*
Trent-North: Who had the Honour to be Governor to our most
Glorious King, and Gracious Sovereign, in His Youth, when
He was Prince of *Wales*; and soon after was made Captain Ge-
neral of all the Provinces beyond the River of *Trent*, and other
Parts of the Kingdom of *England*; with Power, by a special
Commission, to make Knights.

D U B L I N :

Printed for JAMES KELBURN at the *Three Golden*
Balls in *George's-lane*, over-against the *Castle-*
market, Bookseller, MDCCXL.



To His most Sacred MAJESTY

CHARLES II.

By the Grace of God, King of
Great-Britain, France, and Ire-
land, Defender of the Faith, &c.

May it please Your Majesty,

MY first Book of Horse-
manship, printed in
French, had the honour
of Your Patronage; and I pre-
sume again, to Dedicate this Se-
cond, in *English*, to Your Majesty;
who being not only the greatest
Monarch in *Christendom*, but a
King that loves Justice and Truth,
can best judge of Books, which
contain, I dare say, the perfect
and only Truth of Horse-man-
ship. My Duty, and particular
Affection to Your Person, are
A 2 sufficient

DEDICATION.

sufficient Motives to me, to consecrate, not Books only, but myself, and mine, and all that belongs to us, to Your Majesty's Service: But besides that, Your Favours to me are so many, and so great; that what I am, and have, ought justly to be sacrificed to Your Will and Pleasure, as Yours; wherein I joy more, than if it was mine. Your Wisdom, Sir, Valour, and Conduct, makes all Your Neighbours confess, that Your Majesty is the most glorious King that ever reign'd; and that God will prosper You, in all Your great Actions, and give Your Majesty an happy and long Reign, to the joy and comfort of all Your loyal Subjects, is both heartily wish'd, and fervently pray'd for, by

Your Majesty's 18 MA 63
most Obedient Creature,

WILLIAM NEWCASTLE.



T O T H E
R E A D E R.

HAVING past the greatest part
of my long exile at Antwerp,
one of the finest Cities in the
World, whose Inhabitants are de-
servedly famous, for their extraordinary
Civilities to Strangers, of which I must
acknowledge to have receiv'd a great many
from them : I did, during that time,
publish, in French, a Book of Horse-
manship; and having again, since my re-
turn to my native Country, had much lei-
sure, in my solitary country Life, to recol-
lect my Thoughts, and try new Experi-
ments about that Art; I now, for the
more particular Satisfaction of my Country-
men, print this second Book, in English;
which being neither a Translation of the
A 3 first.

first, nor an absolutely necessary Addition to it, may be of use by itself, without the other, as the other hath been hitherto, and is still, without this; but both together will questionless do best.

I cannot mention Antwerp, upon the score of my Book, but I must also take notice of the Honour I have receiv'd there, from many noble great Persons, who did me the favour to see my Mannage; and of the things they were pleas'd to say, upon occasion of what they saw there; which will be in lieu of Encomiums, in the behalf of Horses and of Horse-manship, very proper in this place.

When I had the honour to wait on Don John of Austria, at Antwerp, brought to him by my Lord of Bristol, his Highness was pleas'd to use me extreme civilly; and to ask both then, and at several other times, for my Book of Horse-manship, before it was printed; and to receive it with great Satisfaction, when I presented his Highness with one: But he did not see my Horses, which, in above twenty Coaches, all the Spaniards of his Court, went to my Mannage to see; with many Noblemen of Flanders, as the Duke of Ascot, and others, before whom I rid myself, three Horses, and my Esquier, five. Being re-
turn'd

turn'd to Don John, *he ask'd them*, whether my Horses were as rare, as their Reputation was great : *To which they answer'd*, that my Horses were such, that they wanted nothing of reasonable Creatures, but speaking. *And the Marquess of Seralvo, Master of the Horse to his Highness, and Governour of the Castle of Antwerp, told his Highness*, that he had ask'd me, what Horses I lik'd best : And that I had answer'd, there were good and bad of all Nations ; but that the *Barbs* were the Gentlemen of Horse-kind, and *Spanish-horses* the Princes. *Which answer did infinitely please the Spaniards : And it is very true, that Horses are so as I said.*

The Marquess of Carasena was so civil, and earnest to see me ride, that he was pleas'd to say, it would be a great Satisfaction to him, to see me on Horse-back, though the Horse should but walk. And being that no excuses would serve, (though I did use many) I was contented to satisfy his so obliging a curiosity ; and told him, I would obey his Commands, though I thought I should hardly be able to fit in the Saddle. Two Days after he came to my Mannage, and I rid first a Spanish-horse, call'd Le Superbe, of a light-bay,

a beautiful Horse; and though hard to be rid, yet when he was hit right, he was the readiest Horse in the World: He went in Corvets forward, backward, sideways, on both Hands; made the cross perfectly upon his Voltoes; and did change upon his Voltoes so just, without breaking time, that no Musician could keep time better; and went terra a terra perfectly. The second Horse I rid, was another Spanish-horse, call'd Le Genty; and was rightly named so, for he was the finest shap'd Horse that ever I saw, and the neatest; a Brown-bay, with a Wite-Star in his Forehead; no Horse ever went terra a terra like him, so just, and so easy; and for the Piroyte in his length, so just, and so swift, that the Standers-by could hardly see the Rider's Face when he went; and truly, when he had done, I was so dizzy, that I could hardly sit in the Saddle: He went also so exactly in Corvets forwards, as no Horse can go better, and yet he had no great Strength; whence it appears, that a Horse of Agility, Lightness, Spirit, well-temper'd, and of a good Disposition, is much better than a Horse that hath only Strength; and that a most mighty and great Dutch Brewer's-Horse, wanting Spirit and Agility, can never go well in the Mannage.

The third and last Horse I rid then, was a Barbe, that went a Metz-ayre, very high, both forward, and upon his Voltoes, and Terra a Terra. And when I had done riding, the Marquess of Carasena seem'd to be very well satisfied; and some Spaniards that were with him, cross'd themselves, and cried, Miraculo.

Many French Gentlemen, and Persons of the greatest Quality of that Nation, did me the favour to see my Horses; and the Prince of Conde himself, with several Noblemen, and Officers, was pleas'd to take the pains to go twice to my Mannage: And though the French think, that all the Horse-manship in the World is in France; yet one of them, and he a very great Man in his Country, was heard say, directing his Speech to me: Par Dieu (Monsieur) est bien hardi qui monte devant vous: And another said, at another time: Il n'y a plus de Seigneur comme vous en Angleterre.

Among many great Persons, of which the vast Country of Germany affords abundance, who, for the most part, delight to travel; the Landgrave of Hesse, did not only do me the honour to visit me, and see my Horses; but, being return'd to his Country, was pleas'd to skew, by a very kind

kind Letter, that he had not forgotten me, nor the Love he had observed I have for Horses; being pleased to promise, he would send me two of his own Breed; but soon after, he was kill'd in the Wars the King of Sweden made with the King of Poland.

As poor as I was in those Days, I made shift to buy, at several times, four Barbs, five Spanish-Horses, and many Dutch-horses; all the most excellent Horses that could be; and among them a grey leaping-horse, the most beautiful that ever I saw; and who went exceeding high and just in Leaps, without any help at all; as all upon the Ground; and Terra a Terra, beyond all other Horses; and he did look as if he had been above the Rate of Horse-kind. The Duke of Guise hearing of him, two Gentlemen, a French-rider, and an Englishman, wrote to me, that if I would part with him, the Duke of Guise would give me 600 Pistols for him; but he was dead three Days before I receiv'd their Letter; and had he liv'd, I would not have taken any Money for him; for he was above price: And besides, I was then too great a Beggar, to think to be made rich by the sale of a Horse: I have bestow'd many thousands of Pounds in

Horses,

Horses, and have given many; but never was a good Horse-Courser; selling being none of my Professions.

The King himself, who is an excellent Judge, both of Men, and Business; of Things of Use, and of Recreation; of Necessity, and of Ornament; did like that Horse very well: And having had the Honour, when I was his Governour, to be the first that sate him on Horse-back, and did instruct him in the Art of Horse-manship; it is a great Satisfaction to me, to make mention here of the joy I had then, to see, that his Majesty made my Horses also better, than any Italian, or French-riders (who had often rid them) could do; and to hear him say, that there are very few that know Horses; which was knowingly said, and wisely judg'd of his Majesty: It being very certain, that all Men undertake to ride them, but very few know them, or can tell what they are good for.

It would fill a Volume, to repeat all the Commendations that were given to Horses, and to Horse-manship, by several worthy Gentlemen, of all Nations, High and Low-Dutch, Italians, English, French, Spaniards, Polacks, and Swedes, in my own private Riding-house, at Antwerp; which, though

though very large, was often so full, that my Esquier, Capt. Mazin, had hardly room to ride; but these few already spoken of, will serve very well instead of all: And after I have given an Account, that I have divided this whole Book in four Parts, and every Part in many Sections, and Paragraphs, wherein I never intended to observe any exact Method; I beseech my Readers to take in good part, that I have however set down, as clearly as I could, without the help of any other Logick, but what Nature hath taught me, all the Observations about Horses, and Horse-manship; which I have made, by a long, and chargeable, though I must needs say, very pleasant, and satisfactory, Experience: And so

Farewe

18 MA 63

THE CONTENTS.

OF the several Authors that have writtens
of Horsemanship, both Italians, French
and English. Page 1

That it is a very impertinent Error,
and of great Prejudice, to think the Mannage
useless. 5

That a good Horseman may be thrown down off his
Horse, without Disparagement to Horsemanship,
contrary to the vulgar Error. 14

Old Grison, and his Translator Mr. Blundevile,
anatomised. 16

To know the Disposition of Horses, by the Elements,
and their Marks. 25

Of the perfect shape of a Horse. 27

The Opinion of a great Master. 31

A strange Conceit of a great Master. 34

The true Method in the Mannage, being the only
way to dress Horses 37

Observations of the Spanish-horse. 45

----- Barb. 48

----- English-horse. 53

----- Frison. 58

----- Denmark and Holland-horse. 59

----- Almain or German-horse. 60

----- Courser of Naples. 62

----- Turkish-horse. 63

----- Arabian-horse. 65

----- Hungarian-horse. 67

----- Polander-horse. ibid.

----- Swedish-horse. 69

Of

The CONTENTS.

<i>Of what stature a Horse is best, either for the War, or for a single Combat, or for any thing else.</i>	70
<i>That there are few good Horses.</i>	72
<i>More Observations concerning Horses.</i>	74
<i>What Stallion is best for the Mannage, the ordering of him, before he mounts the Mares, what kind of Mares, when, and how, they should be put together for Generation.</i>	78
<i>For the housing, feeding, and ordering of Colts.</i>	84
<i>For the Backing of a Colt.</i>	88
<i>Of the Spanish-mules.</i>	90
<i>That Trying is the only way to know Horses.</i>	94
<i>How to know the Age of a Horse</i>	98
<i>What Equipage is proper for the Horse, and most commodious for the Horseman, before the Horse is mounted.</i>	101
<i>A very true Paradox, in dressing of Horses.</i>	106
<i>To make a Horse have a fine Coat.</i>	111
<i>Of shoeing Horses.</i>	114
<i>What is to be done, when the Hair from the Mane and Tail falls away.</i>	118
<i>To cause the Hair to grow again.</i>	ibid.
<i>Rare Receipts, Julips, Glisters and Potions, for cooling a Horse over-heated by violent exercise.</i>	120
<i>When a Horse is over-ridden to comfort him.</i>	121
<i>To cool and refresh a Horse.</i>	124
<i>A Receipt of the cooling Julip, or Diet-drink, that Doctor Davison doth give in Fevers.</i>	ibid.
<i>A Julip for Fevers to bind the Body, if it be loose.</i>	125
<i>A most excellent cooling Portion.</i>	126

PART II.

<i>Of Riding and Dressing Horses upon the Ground</i>	127
<i>Of the natural Paces.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of a Horse's Trot.</i>	133

The CONTENTS.

<i>A true Description of all the natural and artificial Motions a Horse can make.</i>	134
<i>The right way of ordering the Cavezone; and the operation and use of it.</i>	136
<i>Observations about the Cavezone, about the Ply or bending the Horse's Shoulders into the turn; and in what place the Cheeks of the Bitt then are, or where they rest.</i>	143
<i>The Operation of the Cavezone.</i>	145
<i>Curious and true Observations about the working of the Bitt alone, which being not truly considered, no man can work with the Bitt as he ought to do.</i>	147
<i>Of the working with the outward Rein of the Bridle.</i>	150
<i>Of the working the Bitt when the Horse goes straight forward.</i>	151
<i>Of another operation of the Bitt.</i>	152
<i>Of the operation of the two Reins separated in both Hands.</i>	153
<i>To work with the Bridle in the left Hand only.</i>	154
<i>Of the operation of the outward Rein of the Bridle.</i>	155
<i>The Reins being both in your Left-hand, how to work them both at one Time for Passenger.</i>	156
<i>Of the use of the two Reins of the Bridle.</i>	ibid.
<i>Observations how to hold the Reins of the Bridle.</i>	158
<i>My Opinion for Spurs.</i>	159
<i>Of the several Corrections, and Helps with the Spurs.</i>	160
<i>Of the secret helps of the Calf of the Leg and Spurs.</i>	166
<i>Of the Rod.</i>	167
<i>For Corvets with the Rod.</i>	168
<i>To help with the Rod in all manner of Leaps.</i>	171
<i>Of the Voice.</i>	172
<i>Of the Tongue.</i>	173
<i>How Horses are to be rewarded and punished: and that fear doth much; love, little.</i>	ibid.
a 2	Oppo-

The CONTENTS.

<i>Opposition in Horses against the Rider, a sign of Strength and Spirit.</i>	176
<i>What makes a Horse go by Rote, or Routine.</i>	178
<i>That a Horse of three Years old is too young for the Mannage.</i>	179
<i>How a Man should sit perfectly on horse-back.</i>	180
<i>The secret helps of the Horseman's Body.</i>	183
<i>The new and true Method of working at first, either Colts, young Horses, or old ignorant Horses upon large Circles D'une piste.</i>	184
<i>Of large Circles upon a Trot.</i>	186
<i>Of Galloping upon Circles D'une piste.</i>	187
<i>Another excellent Lesson to supple a Horse's Shoulders.</i>	189
<i>Another Lesson for suppling a Horse's Shoulders upon large Circles.</i>	ibid.
<i>Excellent Notes to make an End of the working of the Horse's Shoulders.</i>	195
<i>Of the Voltoes in Passager.</i>	197
<i>Needful Observations.</i>	202
<i>To work a Horse upon Passager, either with his Head to the Wall, or upon Circles; either with the Cavezone in your Hand or the Cavezone tied to the Pommel; or the Bridle Reins separated in both your Hands, or the Bridle only in your left Hand.</i>	205
<i>A general Rule.</i>	207
<i>More Observations.</i>	209
<i>The just and exact way for Terra a Terra.</i>	212
<i>Of changing upon Terra a Terra.</i>	217
<i>Of changing upon Demi-voltoes, Terra a Terra.</i>	218
<i>Of Galloping, and Changing en soldat.</i>	219
<i>To prepare a Horse for Passades.</i>	220
<i>Of the Piroette.</i>	222
<i>One of the greatest secrets in the Mannage ever found out.</i>	223
<i>To put a Horse upon the Hanches: being the chief work in the Mannage.</i>	231

The CONTENTS.

PART III.

<i>For dressing and making Horses in all several Ayres in a new way.</i>	238
<i>A new way at the single Pillar for the Dressing of all Horses in all Ayres whatsoever</i>	244
<i>How to dress a Horse perfectly in Corvets without Pillar which is the surest way.</i>	247
<i>The true way for Corvets.</i>	253
<i>Of Corvets upon Voltoes, and to change upon them.</i>	255
<i>A Method how to dress Leaping Horses.</i>	259
<i>A true Observation in Riding.</i>	260

PART IV.

<i>Containing all the Faults and Errors a Horse can commit, with the Vices and Horses Faults in the Mannage, and the ways how to rectify him, and the medicines how to cure him.</i>	262
<i>How to work with the Bridle, a Horse that hath the Vice of bringing in his outward Shoulder too much.</i>	264
<i>Observations.</i>	266
<i>Of a Resty Horse.</i>	269
<i>Of a Runaway Horse.</i>	270
<i>Of a Horse that retains his Forces.</i>	272
<i>How to assure Horses for the Wars.</i>	273
<i>Of vicious Horses.</i>	274
<i>The old way for Trench and Martingal.</i>	275
<i>Of the false Reins.</i>	277
<i>Of the Follies of some People thinking they can make leaping Horses.</i>	278
<i>Of a Horse that goes Incaputiata which is when he arms himself against the Bitt.</i>	280
<i>The Epitome of Horsemanship.</i>	
<i>All Ayres you must help with the outward Rein.</i>	282
<i>Of</i>	

The CONTENTS.

Of Demi-ayres.	281
Of Leaps.	ibid.
Of Pessades.	285
Of Terra a Terra.	ibid.
To work a Horse's Croup.	285
An effectual Discourse of Horsemanship.	290
Another Lesson to put a Horse upon the Hanches which is very effectual.	290
It is very material for the Dressing of Horses in the Mannage to know the several operations of the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths tied to the Pommel.	290
The Quintessence of Horsemanship.	290
To know the Degrees of tying the inward Cave- zone's Rein, either to the Girths or the Pommel of the Saddle, which is the life or soul of the Mannage, never before found out.	300
Of the Bridle and Bitt without the Cavezone	300
Of the Perfection of dressing Horses in the Man- nage brought into so narrow a compass, that if be learned by heart and punctually practised, it impossible to fail dressing any Horse whatsoever	300
To supple a Horse's Shoulders upon a Trot, or petit Gallop.	ibid.
Another excellent Lesson to make Horses supple the Shoulders.	300
For all Ayres whatsoever thus upon Voltoes.	300
For Passager, or Incavelar, which is to lap one over another, not every time, but every second time.	300
For Pesates.	300
Of the Perfection, and Exact way of making Horses obey the Heels.	300
Of Terra a Terra.	300
Of Passades by a Wall.	300
The Difference betwixt the working of the outward Rein and the inward Rein in Corvets.	300
For Terra a Terra upon Voltoes.	300

The CONTENTS.

<i>Of a rare way to dress a Horse perfectly.</i>	325
<i>Of a most effectual way to dress Horses, and so true and certain, that whosoever shall read it, mark it, and understand it, and carefully practise it, will infallibly dress all manner of Horses to a great perfection.</i>	328
<i>To supple a Horses Shoulders.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Bridle-hand; which deserves to be well observed, being the sole of the Mannage, and the most effectual thing that can be.</i>	331
<i>Of some Observations in Horsemanship.</i>	332
<i>Of Bitts, and of the Use of them.</i>	335
<i>The Bitts that follow are the best.</i>	339
<i>Of the Imperfections of a Horse's Mouth.</i>	341

S U B-

SUBSCRIBERS NAMES.

A

MR. James Andrew

B

Hon. Capt. Robert Butler

Ald. George Bennet Book-
feller in Cork, 6 Books

Joseph Bennet, Esq; Re-
corder of Cork

Mr. Laurence Bomford

Mr. Willam Barry

Bridges Baldwin, Esq;

C

Capt. James Clarke

Capt. Philip Cheneviz

Lieut. Crofton

Quart. Mast. Chr. Conyers

John Cuffack, Esq;

John McCann Horse Rider

Edward Mc Cullagh

Robert Cathcart

John Mc Cartney

D

Charles Daulnis

Mr. Jonathan Doddridge

Mr. Isack Dance

E

Brabazon Eccleston, Esq;

Mr. Henry Evat of Clownis

F

Chichester Fortescue, Esq;

Mr. Thomas Flambert

Wil. Henry Fortescue, Esq;

G

Ant. Garmonsway, 2 Books

Mr. James Graham of
Clownish

Mr. Nicholas Gernon of
Clownis

H

Roger Hall, Esq;

Walter Harris, Esq;

Mr. Love Hiat

Mr. Dan. Huleat

I

Mr. John Jones

Mr. James Johnston

K

Col. Peter Kerr

Lieut. Kendal

George Kitson

Dean Keogh Chaplain to

Rt. Hon. Lord Kingston

L

Capt. Montague Lambart

Mr. Boyle Lennox

Mr. Thomas Lecky

Mr. Thomas Lawrence

M

Mr. Thomas Moore

N

Mr. Thomas Nowland

Mr. James Nugent

P

John Putland, Esq;

Mr. Thomas Pope

R

Mr. David Ross

Mr. Richard Read

S

Edward Synge, Esq;

Cornet Will. Sempil

Mr. John Spring

Mr. George Smith

Mr. Henry Stotesbury

T

Mr. William Thomson

W

Maj. Shuckburgh Whitney

Lieut. West

Cornet Wills

Cornet Charles West

Capt Richard Wilson

Mr. Thomas Wilson

Mr. Peter Warren

Mr. John Williams

18 MA 63



T H E
NEW METHOD,
A N D
Extraordinary Invention
T O D R E S S
H O R S E S.

The F I R S T P A R T.

*Of the ſeveral Authors that have Writ-
ten of Horſeſmanship, both Italians,
French and Engliſh.*

THIS Noble Art was firſt be-
gun and invented in *Italy*, and
all the *French* and other *Nati-*
ons went thither to learn; the Seat of
Horſeſmanship being at *Naples*: The
firſt that ever writ of it was *Frederick*
Grifon a *Neapolitan*; and truly he writ
like a *Horſeman*, and a great Maſter
A in

in the Art for those times : *Henry the Eighth* sent for two *Italians* that were his Scholars, to come to him into *England* ; and of one of them came all our *Alexanders* ; and their Scholars fill'd the Kingdom with *Horsemen*.

Sir *Philip Sidney* brought an *Italian Rider*, one *Signior Romano*, to teach his Nephew *William Lord Herbert*, afterwards *Earl of Pembroke* ; and the same Sir *Philip Sidney* brought also over an other *Italian Rider*, call'd *Signior Prospero*: The old *Earl of Leicester*, sent for an excellent Rider, out of *Italy*, call'd *Signior Claudio Curtio*, who writ a Book of *Horsemanship*, and is quoted by several *Italian Writers* ; but I think, that very much of his Book is stolen out of *Grison*. *Laurentius Cuspius* is another Author, none of the best, with horrible Bitts. Then there is *Cesar Fieske*, who hath writ a Book much out of *Grison* too, where he meddles with Musick. There is another Book of *Horsemanship*, call'd *Gloria del Cavallo*, with long Discourses, and much out of *Grison*. There is another *Italian Book of Horsemanship*, call'd *Cavallo Frenato de Pietro Antonio*, a *Neapolitan* ; much stolen out of *Grison*: But his
Book

Book consists most of *Bitts*, to little purpose; though they seem to be great Curiosities. But the most famous Man that ever was in *Italy*, was at *Naples*, a *Neapolitan*, call'd *Signior Pignatel*; but he never writ: *Monsieur la Broue* rid under him five Years; *Monsieur De Pluvinel* nine years: And *Monsieur St. Anthoine* many years. The *Liberty*, which is the best for *Bitts*, at this Day, we call *Ala Pignatel*.

These three aforementioned *Frenchmen* that rid under *Signior Pignatel*, fill'd *France* with *French Horsemen*; which before were fill'd with *Italians*. *Monsieur la Broue*, I believe, was the first that ever writ of *Horsemanship*, in the *French Language*: and the first *Frenchman* that ever writ in that Art; His Book is very tedious, many Words for little Matter; and his first Book is absolutely all stolen out of *Grison*; and his second Book from *Signior Pignatell's Lessons*; But *La Broue*, to seem wiser than he was, and to make up a Book, divides a Circle into so many parts, to bring a *Horse* to a whole Circle, that it confounds a *Horse* more, and is harder for him, than to work him upon a whole Circle at first: And for *La Broue's* third Book of *Bitts*, there is no great Matter in it. As for *Pluvinel*, no doubt but he

was a good *Horseman* ; but his Invention of the *Three Pillars*, of which his Book pretends to be an absolute Method, is no more than an absolute *Routine* ; and hath spoil'd more *Horses*, than ever any Thing did ; for *Horses* are not made to the Hand and the Heel at all with them ; nor will they go from the usual place where they are Ridden, nor well there neither. But my Book is stolen out of no Book, nor any Man's Practice but my own, and is as true as it is new ; and if any Man do not like it, it is a great Sign he understands it not : for there is no way for Dressing *Horses* like it ; If it be not Good, I am sure it is the Best that hath been writ yet ; what will be writ hereafter I know not.

I must tell you that the *Italian Writers* are tedious, and write more of Marks, Colours, Temperatures, Elements, Moon, Stars, Winds, and Bleedings, than of the Art of Riding ; only to make up a Book, though they wanted *Horse-manship*.

There was one *Signior Hannibal a Neapolitan* that came into *England* and serv'd the Lord *Walden*.

Monsieur St. Anthoine a French-man, was a very good *Horse-man*, and sent over by *Henry the Fourth of France*, to teach *Prince Henry* ; *Monsieur La Coste* was his
Page,

Page, and rid excellently well, especially Leaping Horses. *Monsieur Boycler* rid under him too, and was an excellent *Horse-man*; *Monsieur Founteney*, which was either his Nephew, or his Natural Son; for he gave him all when he dyed, was also a very good *Horse-man*, but none of these ever writ any thing of *Horse-manship*. And the best *Horse-man*, that ever I knew, is one of my own Breeding, and rides by my Method, which is Captain *Mazine*, now a Query to the KING.



That it is a very Impertinent Error, and of great Prejudice, to think the Man-nage Useless.

Many say, that all things in the *Man-nage* is nothing but Tricks, and Dancing, and Gambles, and of no Use: but by their Leave, whosoever says so, is very much deceived; for a *Horse* that is well settled upon the Hand, and firm and obedient to the Hand and Heels, gallops the Field, and changes as often, and just as you will, either without the Circle, or within the Circle, *Serpiger*, *Terra a Terra*, the *Piroite*, or what you will; and all this upon the *Ground*, and

every thing and particle of it Useful; and so Useful, that a good *Horse-man*, upon such a *Horse*, would have too much Advantage, in conscience, of him that talks against it, either in a single Combat, or in the Wars; for *A Ready Horse* will Run, Stop, Turn, go Back; and if he Rise, he knows how to come Down again, and is so well on the Hand, as you cannot pull him over with both your Hands; and so Obedient, that I will Run him on Fire, Water, or Sword, and he shall obey me: And all This cannot be done but by the Art of Riding, and that in the *Mannage*.

But, What makes these Men speak against it? The first Reason, is, Because they are Ignorant, and so speak; as the wisest Men in the World must do, when they will speak of any thing they know not, and think that *Talk* will carry it: But the main Reason is this; They find they cannot Ride well; nay, indeed, not at all *A Horse* of *Mannage*, and they would be the finest Men in the world, for all things, though they will take Pains for Nothing; and because, forsooth, they cannot ride by Inspiration, without taking Pains, therefore it is worth Nothing, and of no Use: But if every thing was Naught that they

they cannot do, there would be very few things Good in the World.

The next thing, is, That they think it a Disgrace for a Gentleman to do any thing Well. What! Be a Rider. Why not? Many Kings and Princes think themselves Graced with being good *Horse-men*.

Our Gracious and most Excellent KING, is not only the Handsomest, and most Comely *Horse-man* in the World, but as Knowing and Understanding in the Art as any Man; and no Man makes a Horse go better than I have seen some go under His MAJESTY the first time that ever he came upon their Backs, which is the Height and Quintessence of the Art; and yet I dare say the KING takes it for no Disgrace to be so Excellent a *Horse-man*: The Duke of YORK is also a very good *Horse-man*, and Both take it for an Honour, and no Disgrace; and think it a most useful and noble Quality for Princes.

The Duke of *Mommorancy*, Constable of France, and the first Gentleman of *Chriendom*, was the best *Horse-man* in the World, and to this Day the best Branches for Bitts was of his Invention, called *La Constable*; and so he devised the best *spurs*; and never any *Esquire* rid like him,

him, being certainly the best *Horse-man* in the World, which he thought a Grace to him: The Prince of *Conde*, his Grand-child by the Princess his Mother, is an excellent *Horse-man*, and thinks it no Disgrace to him.

Most of the Princes in *France* highly esteem it, and are good *Horse-men*: nay, their King, at this present time, highly esteems it, and is a good *Horse-man*; nor is any Gentleman in *France* esteem'd that is not a good *Horse-man*.

The great King of *Spain* deceased, did not only love it, and understand it, but was absolutely the best *Horse-man* in all *Spain*.

I may therefore desire these Men to be more merciful, and to think it no Disgrace, to them, to be *Horse-men*; but still the old Business will stick with them, which is, they cannot do it, and therefore it is Naught: A very good and senseless Reason! He that will take Pains for nothing, shall never do any thing Well; for Arts, Sciences, and good Qualities, come not by Instinct, but are got by great Labour, Study and Practice; wherefore these Men will none (I thank you) till they be as easily Learnt, as the *Seven Deadly Sins*,
Railing

Railing and wearing *Fine Cloaths* and *Feathers*.

But let us see now, how these Men are on Horse-back, and what their Horses do under them. This *Cavalier* Seats as far back in the Saddle as he can, his Leggs stretcht as far forward before the Shoulders of the Horse, with his Toes out, that he may Spur him in the Shoulders; and Stoops in the Back, which they call a comely Seat; not knowing how to hold the Bridle in his Hand, nor guesst at any Helps at all; and appears on Horse-back as if he were three quarters foxt, so Ridiculous is that Seat: and having sent to a Saddler, or a Bitt-maker, to Bitt his Horse, all is Well.

Being mounted thus, as I tell you, you shall see his ready *Horse of Use*, and his *Horse-manship*: When he would turn him on the Right Hand, the Horse doth turn on the Left; and when he would turn him on the Left Hand, the Horse doth turn on the Right: When he would stop him, the Horse runs away: When he would put him forward, the Horse runs backward: When he would put him back, the Horse rises, and comes over with him, and there the good *Horse-man* lies, and must send for a Surgeon, or a Bone-

him, being certainly the best *Horse-man* in the World, which he thought a Grace to him : The Prince of *Conde*, his Grand-child by the Princess his Mother, is an excellent *Horse-man*, and thinks it no Disgrace to him.

Most of the Princes in *France* highly esteem it, and are good *Horse-men*: nay, their King, at this present time, highly esteems it, and is a good *Horse-man*; nor is any Gentleman in *France* esteem'd that is not a good *Horse-man*.

The great King of *Spain* deceased, did not only love it, and understand it, but was absolutely the best *Horse-man* in all *Spain*.

I may therefore desire these Men to be more merciful, and to think it no Disgrace, to them, to be *Horse-men*; but still the old Business will stick with them, which is, they cannot do it, and therefore it is Naught : A very good and senseless Reason ! He that will take Pains for nothing, shall never do any thing Well; for Arts, Sciences, and good Qualities, come not by Instinct, but are got by great Labour, Study and Practice; wherefore these Men will none (I thank you) till they be as easily Learnt, as the *Seven Deadly Sins*,
Railing

Railing and wearing *Fine Cloaths* and *Feathers*.

But let us see now, how these Men are on Horse-back, and what their Horses do under them. This *Cavalier* Seats as far back in the Saddle as he can, his Leggs stretcht as far forward before the Shoulders of the Horse, with his Toes out, that he may Spur him in the Shoulders; and Stoops in the Back, which they call a comely Seat; not knowing how to hold the Bridle in his Hand, nor guesst at any Helps at all; and appears on Horse-back as if he were three quarters foxt, so Ridiculous is that Seat: and having sent to a Saddler, or a Bitt-maker, to Bitt his Horse, all is Well.

Being mounted thus, as I tell you, you shall see his ready *Horse of Use*, and his *Horse-manship*: When he would turn him on the Right Hand, the Horse doth turn on the Left; and when he would turn him on the Left Hand, the Horse doth turn on the Right: When he would stop him, the Horse runs away: When he would put him forward, the Horse runs backward: When he would put him back, the Horse rises, and comes over with him, and there the good *Horse-man* lies, and must send for a Surgeon, or a Bone-

Bone-Setter, if he be not kill'd : Nay, his Horse shall neither come near Drum, Trumpet, or Colours, Pistol, or Sword ; but he fetches forty Figaries to endanger him and his Horse : And this is the excellent *Horse-man*, and the ready *Horse of Use*. How is it possible to be otherwise, when the Horse knows not how to obey either Hand or Heel, and the *Horse-man* is as ignorant as he ? Whence it follows, That there is nothing to make a sure Horse, but the *Mannage*.

I would have every *Horse* (that wears a Bitt) Gelding, or Nagg, wrought in the *Mannage*, to be firm on the Hand, both for Readiness and Safety, were it for a B: B: Judge, or Lady : For without settling of the Hand, they are very unuseful, and dangerous.

I wonder how Men are so Presumptuous to think they can ride as *Horse-men*, because they can ride forward from *Barnet* to *London*, which every Body can do; and I have seen Women to ride astride as well as they : They do not think of any Art, or Trade, as they do of *Horse-manship*, where they are all Masters : Which doth not prove so, when they Ride.

I think I have proved sufficiently their Error, and Ignorance ; and as fully proved,

ed, That there is no *Useful Horse* but those that are made in the *Mannage*.

The next thing, is, to tell you, that *Corvets* and other *Ayres*, settles a Horse very well upon the Hand; makes him Light before, and puts him upon the Hanches, which are all useful for a Soldier's Horse; and makes him stop upon the Hanches, which is very useful for a Man in Arms; for, did the Horse stop upon the Shoulders, he would give his Rider (being armed) such a Shock as would make his Bones ake, was he never so sound: Nay, to make a *Horse* go in Leaps, firms him on the Hand, which is good for a Soldier's Horse.

But, says a Gallant, when I should have Use of him in the Field, then he will be playing Tricks: That Gallant is deceived; for, the Helps to make Horses go in *Ayres*, and to make them go upon the *Ground*, are several; and good *Horse-men* have much ado to make them go in *Ayres*, with their best Helps; so that, if you let them alone, they will not trouble you; besides, two or three Days March will make them, that they will not go in *Ayres*, if you would have them; and they are much the Readier to go on the *Ground*: Whereby you see, that there is no *Horse* whatsoever can be

be a good and useful *Horse*, in any kind, with a Bitt, but what is wrought in the *Mannage*.

And therefore I advise you, for your Safety and Use, to ride all *Horses* in the *Mannage*, and you will find it very true, that there can be no *Horse* else Safe and Useful; nor can any *Horse* go well in a Snaffle, except he be formerly rid with a Bitt.

As for Pleasure and State, what Prince or Monarch looks more Princely, or more Enthroned, than upon a beautiful *Horse*, with rich Foot-cloths, or rich Saddles, and waving Plumes, making his through great Cities, to amaze the People with Pleasure and Delight?

Or, what more Glorious or Manly, than, at great Marriages of Princes, to run at the Ring, or Tilt, or course at the Field? What can be more comely or pleasing, than to see *Horses* go in all their several *Ayres*? and to see so excellent a Creature, with so much Spirit, and Strength, to be so obedient to his Rider, as if having no Will but His, they had but one Body, and one Mind, like a *Centaur*? But above all, What sets off a King more, than to be on a beautiful *Horse* at the Head of his Army?

Thus

Thus it is proved, that there is nothing of more Use than *A Horse of Mannage*; nor any thing of more State, Manliness, or Pleasure, than Riding; and as it is the noblest, so it is the healthfullest Exercise in the World. In Hunting, Hawking, Bowling, Shooting, Cocking, Cards and Dice, and many such things, there is no Use at all, but meerly Pleasure: But in *A Horse of Mannage*, both Use and Pleasure. It is true, that if there was nothing Commendable but what is Useful, strictly examined; we must have nothing but Hollow Trees for our Houses, Figg-leaf-Breeches for our Clothes, Acorns for our Meat, and Water for our Drink; for certainly, most things else are but Superfluities and Curiosities.

I find Fault with no Mans delights, and do only vindicate (with Truth) my own, since I have been so prest to it with odd Discourses; but I leave every one to his own Ways, and his own Delights, desiring they will do the like by me, which I shall take for a great Favour: But if it chances they will not be so gracious, and just to me, it will grieve me so extremely, that, in my Conscience, I shall sleep never the worse.

B

That



That a good Horse-man may be Thrown-Down off his Horse, without Disparagement to Horse-manship, contrary to the Vulgar Error.

MOST People are very much deceiv'd, when, if a *Horse* throws down his Rider, they not only Laugh at him, but think to have Reason so to do; saying of the best *Horse-man* in the World, to whom such a Mischance should happen; That he is a fine *Horse-man* indeed! For they can swear, that they knew a *Horse* threw him. But they must learn, that a good *Horse-man* may be thrown down sooner than ill ones; because good *Horse-men* little think of Sitting, and so may be surprized, all their Thoughts being how to make their *Horses* go well, and never doubt throwing; whereas an ill *Horseman* thinks of nothing but Sitting, for fear he should be thrown, and never thinks how to make his *Horse* go well; for he knows not how to do it: But holds by the mane, and the Pommel, and his Head at the *Horses* Head, ready to beat out his Teeth, and and his Leggs holding by the Flank; and

is so deformed on *Horse back*, as if he were a strange *African Monster*; and the *Horse* so disordered, that to see him Sit in that manner, is the most nauseous Sight that can be, and the most displeasing to the Beholders; and were much better for the Spectators to see him fall, and for his Reputation, so he received no hurt by the Fall.

Thus you see, that any Groom, or Tinker, may Sit, and yet be no *Horseman*, which is a greater Business than only Sitting; for a *Jackanapes* in *Paris Garden*, when he is baited with muzzled Mastiffs, the Gentleman Sits very sure, but not very comely, and in my Conscience is no excellent *Horse-man*: Sitting is but one thing in *Horsemanship*, and there are thousands of things in the Art.

So if a good *Horseman* be thrown by Chance, hath he lost all his *Horsemanship*, because he was once thrown? And is an ignorant Fellow inspired presently with *Horsemanship*, because he can ill-favourably cling to the Horse, and hold on? No, sitting fast is the meanest thing in *Horsemanship*, which comprehends many more of greater Consequence.

But yet I must tell you, I never knew in my Life, a good *Horseman* thrown,

but I have known many presumptuous ignorant Fellows get falls; but, as, if a good *Horseman* by Chance be thrown, he doth not lose all his *Horsemanship* with that fall, if he be not kill'd; so an ignorant Man, if he sits, is not presently infused with *Horsemanship*: For it is a mistake as ridiculous as it is common, to take sitting fast on Horeback for the whole art of *Horsemanship*.



Old Grifon, and his Translator Mr. Blundevile, Anatomized.

OLD *Grifon*, and many *Italian* Authors, would have a Bardel, which is a Straw Saddle, set first on a Colt's back, and nothing but a Rope Cavazon on his Nose; which is to no purpose in the the World, but loss of time: Then they will Trot him two or three Years up Hills, and own Hills, to stop him; which is to less Purpose, and more loss of time.

They would have a Circle, or Ring, as they call them, of an Acre of Ground in plow'd Land, to make a Horse go a hundred turns in it, which is worse than to ride a Journey of thirty Miles; and I wonder

wonder what Horses they had in those Days; for I am sure, those we have now, are not able to do it.

They teach to ride one Horse two or three Hours at a time, when one may well ride half a Dozen at least in an Hour, and give them sufficiently enough.

For their single turns, and double turns, call'd *Radopiare*, they are ridiculous, and so is the *Repolone*, which is to gallop him half a Mile, and then turn him ill-favouredly and false: And their several Mannages of *Metzo Tempo*, *Tutto Tempo*, and *Contratempo*, are no better.

For a resty Horse they raise a whole Town with Staves to beat him, with many curious Inventions, with Squirts, Fire, Whelps, Hedge-hoggs, Nails, and I know not what. And the same they do before a Horse that runs away, as well as to the resty Horse behind.

Then for Spurring, the Bunching stroke, and the Clinching stroke; and if he will not endure the Spurs, Boots stufft with Straw, and Spurs at them, to hang at his Sides, (which is not worth a Straw ;) and the *Chambetta*, which signifies nothing.

For a Horse that is afraid, and Starts, they appoint Whirlegiggs of several Colours,

lours, which will make him ten times worse. And to lay Stones in his Way, and a hollow Ditch to ride him in, are lamentable Busineses in *Horsemanship*: And they have as many foolish ways for the *Credenza*, which shall never cure him of that Vice.

They bid us take heed, by any means not to make the *Horse* too Weak-Neckt; which is a prime Note! But Mr. *Blundevile* did not know, that all Horses are a Stiff-Necked Generation.

Mr. *Pagano* would never use his *Horse* to any thing but a Walk, or a Trot at the most; wherewith (I am sure) he shall never dress a *Horse* perfectly; and yet (says Mr. *Blundevile*) it was a wonder to all beholders, to see, that in eight Days, he would make him run a Career perfectly, which I will undertake to have done the first Morning that ever he ran.

Speaking of his *Capriole*, he mistake the *Ayre*, as well as the making of the *Horse*.

For *Corvets*, (Mr. *Blundevile* did not understand it (nor his Master *Grifon* be like) when he says, the *Spaniards* take delight to make their *Horses* go in *Corvettes* which never *Spaniard* yet could do; b

he takes Trampling, and Prancing, for *Corvets*, wherem he is much deceiv'd; for *Corvets*, is the hardest *Ayre* in the World, which no *Horse* can go, unless he be perfectly within the Hand, and the Heels, and upon the Hanches; which is not Trampling.

To ride short, he calls after the *Turkish* Fashion, wherein he is deceived; for it is *A La Genette*, which is the *Spanish* Fashion too; and to ride short in *Corvets* is his mistake, for I would ride longer in *Corvets* than any other *Ayre*. He is also mistaken, when he says, he would not have above two *Horses* in her Majesty's Stable to go in *Corvets*; for it is of no use (saith he) and such delighting Toys of Prauncing up and down they will do, when they should go upon the Ground: For first, there is nothing makes a *Horse* better upon the Hand, than *Corvets*, and that's useful; then, there is nothing puts a *Horse* so much upon the Hanches, and firms him there, as *Corvets*, and that is useful too; and Mr. *Blundevile* is mightily deceived, to think, that he will go in *Corvets*, when he should go upon the Ground; for the helps are several: And let a *Horse* be never so apt, or perfect in *Corvets*, and made upon the Ground,

Ground too, (which is the first thing must be done) I dare say he shall never offer at *Corvets* with me, but go just upon the Ground as I would have him; because the Helps are several.

He says, that in five or six Months he can make a *Horse* to Gallop the Field (a necessary thing for a Soldier's Horse;) which is no more, as he understands it, than in an Acre of Ground to gallop and change, still upon a Gallop; and that I will undertake to make a Cart-Horse do in three Days.

Besides, they dig out Rings, and entrench themselves (which is a horrible Folly;) but I desire no more for stopping than a plain Place, without Hills, or any such Toys; and will dress any Horse perfectly there, by the new Method of my *French Book*: which I refer you to.

For Mr. *Bhundevile's* Bitts, they are very ridiculous; the Eyes are Nought, the Cheeks as ill, and the Mouths worst of all; with Cats Feet, Up-sets, Ports, and broken Ports; Cats Feet and Upsets, with a Revet Nail; and his compleat Bitts, are compleatly Abominable, with their Water-Chain and Trench, the Mouth of the Bitt too being as big as my Wrist, and the Branches as long as my Arm; and

and the Curb as big as a Chain for a Horse Nose, with some Stories flying French, 'which is a Snaffle tyed to the Bitt, and such other tormenting ignorant Follies : The Leggs are so loose, as if they were broken in the Knees, and are to help up and down, as if they were Wind-Mill-Sails.

He would have us to strike a *Horse* with a Cudgel, or a Rod, between the Ears, and, upon the Head ; which is abominable, though he thinks it a rare Secret. And thus much of Mr. *Blundevile's* riding, which is *Grison* translated into *Englisk*.

Mr. *Blundevile's* Breeding, to turn the Stallion loose to the *Mares*, is indifferent well, but not right ; and to put him to them again at *Holland-Tide*, stark Nought. To cover in Hand is unnatural, and you shall not have half of them (so covered) prove with *Fole*.

To have a *Horse-Fole*, or *Mare-Fole*, by tying his right, or left Stone ; to observe the Moon, and the Wind, to sail to Procreation, or get a *Fole* by the Almanack, is very ridiculous ; and to put painted Cloths before the *Mares*, to make the *Foles* of what Colour you would have them, is no less Ridiculous,

That,

That, if the *Horse*, as soon as he hath covered, come down on the right Side, it is a *Horse* Colt; and if of the left Side, it is a *Filley*: And if, so many Days after the *Mare* is mounted, her Coat looks Sleek, and Shines, then she hath conceived; if it do not Shine, she hath not conceived, are all Tales to tell to Children, rather than to Men of Reason and Discretion; all Mountebank-ship and Fooleries: and to make the *Horse* lusty, and the *Mares*, there is little or nothing in it.

Mr. *Blundevile* Reasons thus: That for as much, as all *Mares* do Fole standing. Wherein certainly he took his Note out of some learned Author, as *Aristotle* or the like; for I will assure you, that never any *Mare* in the World did Fole standing: if she did, the *Fole* would break his Neck; for he comes into the World with his Head first, and his two Feet on both sides of his Head. No. The *Mare* is in too great Pain to Fole standing, and therefore she lies down, and Foles so.

Mr. *Blundevile* says, there is a thing grows in the Foles Fore-head like a *Figg* which the *Mare* commonly bites off which is called *Hippomenes*; and if it be taken

taken, it doth miraculous things in Love-matters, which he was loth to write of. Truly he was over-careful, with all his old Writers; and in my Conscience, if it could be got, it would do miraculous things, not only in Love, but in every thing else. But the truth of this Business is, that never any such thing did grow upon any Fole's Fore-head; and therefore could never be Bitt off by the Mare. No doubt but that mistake is caused by the Secondine, or Clean, or Bagg, in which the Fole lies, whereof all the strings meets at the end, which looks like a little Knot; and that hangs loose upon the Fole's Head; but when the Fole is Foled, that, and the Bagg, goes together; for it is all one thing.

Mr. *Blundevile* bids us take heed, that the Mare do not eat that Bagg, or Secondine, because the Country Wives Kye so. But I have enquired of the Country-Men, and they say, not one Cow in a hundred does do it: And for Mares, they will assure you, they never do it: And if you ask, what they do with it? I say they let it lie there, and trouble themselves no more with it.

Mr. *Blundevile* condemns those that take the Foles, to be taken off at Martlemas;

mas; because, according to his old learned Authors, he would have them Suck two Years at least: That is, he would have them heavy, flaby Jades, besides the loss of the Fruitfulness of his *Mares*; wherein his old Authors are very much deceived:

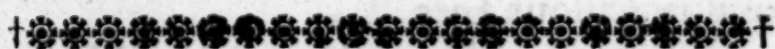
Then he says, that the *Foles* Leggs are as long when they are Foled, as ever afterward; wherein he is very much deceived. Does he think, that the Body only grows, and the Leggs not at all? A very ridiculous Opinion! For, look at the *Fole's* Leggs, and the *Mares*, and you shall find the *Mares* Leggs are longer a great deal. Can any Man think, that a Gray-Hound's Whelp, as soon as he is Whelpt, hath his Leggs as long as when he is a Dog? It is Ridiculous.

To know, which *Fole* will have the best Spirit, by running Foremost, and leaping of Hegdes and Rails; is quite contrary to the Experience I had once of a Colt, that nothing would keep in, Leaping over all things he came near; and when he came to be rid, the dullest Jade that could be.

To know by their Feet, and much of White, that they are not long-lived, is as false a Rule, as any he hath set down.

His

His reckoning *Horses* Teeth, is beyond the Number of what ever any *Horse* had; and that every *Horse* hath two Tusshes below, and two above, is, I assure you, True. Some *Horses* (say they) have no Tusshes at all, and they commonly ill-natured, being something of the *Mare*; but as there is not one in a hundred but have Tusshes, so there is not one *Mare* in an hundred that have any; and those that have, are ill-natured, participating too much of the *Horse*; and both are a kind of *Hermaphroditical* Compositions. Thus you see, how learned People (with their old Authors) are deceived.



To Know the Disposition of Horses, by the Elements, and their Marks.

MR. *Blundevil* says, the Sorrel is of the Element of Fire, and therefore is full of Mettle, Hot, and Fiery; but I assure you, I have known more Sorrel *Horses* dull Jades than of any other Colour.

That White *Horses* are Flegmatick, and so participate of the Element of Water,

ter, and therefore are dull and heavy Jades : But I assure you again, I have known white *Horses* to be fuller of Spirit, and Livelier, than of any other Colour ; and so his Elements are wrong in every thing : Your best way is, to try your *Horse* ; which Philosophy will hold to know him best.

Mr. *Blundevil* speaks also of the marks of *Horses*, that there are four good, and seven bad ; such a Foot of the far Side, and such a Foot of the near Side, and which fore Foot, and which hinder Foot ; and not too much White in his Face, nor his Legs to be very high White ; and Feathers, and I know not what a kind of Conjuraton : All false and ridiculous Lies.

When once I hear a Man talk of Marks and Elements, I have done with him, and know no other Philosophy but trying ; for there are good and bad of all Colours, and of all Marks ; but there are more bad *Horses* than good of any Colour or Mark, as there are of any thing else, even of Men in all things : Therefore Marks and Colours are foolish and false Toys, only to abuse simple people withal.

Of



Of the perfect Shape of a Horse.

MR. *Blundevil* speaks so of the perfect Shape of a *Horse*, that such a *Horse* as he describes, was never of God's, and Nature's making, but of his own or of some foolish Authors he hath read; for he takes several parts of several *Horses*, and puts them together, which is a *Horse* of their own making; for there was never such a *Horse* foled.

Every Country hath a several Shape of *Horses*; as the *Turk*, the *Neapolitan*, the *Spanish Horse*, the *Barb*, and the *Dutch Horse*; all very fine in their kinds.

In a Word, I will shew you the ridiculousness of setting down the perfect Shape of a *Horse*. For example, who can set down the perfect Shape of a Dog? A *Mastiff* is not a *Grey-Hound*; nor a *Grey-Hound*, a *Lancashire-Hound*; nor a *Lancashire-Hound* a little *Beagle*; and yet all very fine Dogs in their kinds: and so of *Horses*: Which shows the impossibility to set down the perfect Shape of a *Horse*.

Mr. *Blundevil* says, a *Spanish* Horse is Pin-Buttockt, narrow and slender behind: I believe he would have a *Spanish* Horse to have a *Dutch* Horse's Buttock; which would indeed be very Correspondent to the rest of his Shape: Some *Spanish* Horses have Oval Buttocks, which is the finest Buttocks of all.

He says, they have ill Feet: It is true, some have, and so have Horses of all Countries; *Dutch* the worst, and some of the *English* very bad: He says also, *Spanish* Horses are weak; but there are more weak *Dutch* Horses than *Spanish*.

I have had many *Spanish* Horses with good Buttocks, good Feet, and Strong; and if some should be weak, yet their Spirits make them go much better, than any other *Horses* that are stronger.

He says, they are gentle in their Youth, and grow Vitious in their Age: But I assure you, there is no such thing; for they are as gentle in their Age, as they are in their Youth, and very loving Horses: So Mr. *Blundevil* is very much abused by his old Authors whom he reverences so much.

He says, the *Gennet* hath a comely going, like the *Turkish*, which is neither Amble, nor Trot. I would know of

Mr.

Mr. *Blundevil*, what strange kind of going that is, which is neither of those two: But I will assure him, that there is no *Horse*, that hath four Legs, can go, but it must be the action either of an Amble or of a Trot; for Galloping and Running, is another thing, and so are all *Ayres* in the *Mannage*, Mr. *Blundevil* appears by this, to be a better Scholar, than a *Horse-man*: and was indeed a fine Gentleman, well Travelled, an excellent Scholar, a good Translator, and puts things into an excellent Method, but tyed himself too much to old Authors, who knew as little as he in *Horsemanship*; and so Authority abused him, having no Knowledge himself in the Art, and totally wanting Experience in it.

His Treaty for Dyeting of Horses, is as learned as any Physician can write; but yet is nothing as it ought to be; for he wanted Experience.

His Cures of Diseases are most admirable; and indeed, he is the Father of all that Business, and the rarest that hath writ upon that Subject. *Markham* is but *Blundevil* with other Names, and will not acknowledge it: He hath many new Medicines, but they are worth nothing; as his Oyl of Oats. Nor was he a *Horse-*

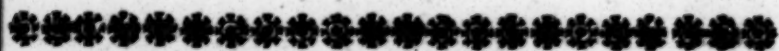
man at all, but only took notes of Medicines, and set them down Methodically.

After him comes *De La Gray*, which is but *Blundevil*, with some new Medicines that are but indifferent: And for his breeding of *Horses*, it is the most ridiculous thing that ever was known writ.

The best Medicines of Mr. *Blundevil's*, are those of *Martine*, who was prime Marshal to queen *Elizabeth*; and, as I take it, an Alman, and an excellent Farrier: Yet, even he, was extremely mistaken about the *Glaunders*, and Mourning of the *Chine*, as by my woful Experience in *Horses* I know, and will better inform you, when I set out my Book of Marshalry, and Shooing.

Mr. *Blundevil* says, that *Barley* makes a *Horse* piss Red, like Blood; but he did not understand it perfectly. It is true; in *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, they feed their *Horses* all with *Barley*; which is because they have no *Oats*: For, certainly excellent *Oats* is the best feeding for a *Horse* in the World. But you must know that of *Barley* there are two kinds; the common *Barley*, that they make Beer of which makes a *Horse* piss a little Red and of that *Barley* they never give to their *Horses* in *Spain*, but of the other *Barley* which

which is called by the Name of Big, and that never makes them piss Red, and is the best feeding for Horses, where they want Oats: Rye scoures too much, and Wheat is too Fatning, and good Bread too Pursey, and Foggy. In Spain they give Barley-Straw, (as my Lord Cottington told me;) but first; they tread it with Oxen, and then it is as soft as Silk. And thus for our English Authors, of whom I have told you the Truth.



The Opinion of a
G R E A T M A S T E R.

A Great Master, held the most excellent *Horseman* beyond the Sea, being bred four or five Years under the best *Horseman* there, and had practised this Art from his Child-hood, did me the Honour, to come to *Antwerp*, of a Visit to me from *Bruxels*, and brought with him four or five *Horses*: I treated him the best I could, and shewed him my *Horses*, both led out, and rid.

He had a young Man with him (his Nephew) who had rid under him for the space of seven Years: And though he had

had seen rid, before him, the Day afore, three of the readiest Horses that ever I had; yet when he rid them, he could not encounter them, or make them go at all; and truly, to my thinking, (I might say to my Knowledge) he had neither Hand, Heel, nor Seat, as he should have had; and so it was impossible to make them go right.

His Master told me, he had found a new Method for Dressing of *Horses*: Which was; first, never to Trot a Horse, (that was his Maxim:) next, never to use the *Cavezon*, nor pull the Horse's Head into the Turn. This is, what he would not have done: And, what he would have done, is; to put the *Horse* to the single Pillar, with a long Rope, and there pinch him with the Spurs, which, says he, puts him upon the Hand: Then to whip him about with the *Shambriere*, to make him go half *Terra a Terra*, and half in *Corvets*, and then to make him go in *Corvets*; which settles him on the Hand: And this is the new Way of Dressing; indeed of not Dressing *Horses*.

To take in pieces, and Anatomize this new Way: And first, of what he will not have done; which is, never to Trot a Horse, and stop him; which is certain-

the Foundation of all things in the *Mannage*, either to settle him on the Hand, or to put him on the Hanches. Next, never to use the *Cavezon*, without which no *Horse* can be drest, for many Reasons. Then, never to pull the Horse's Head into the Turn: By which means the *Horses* Legs, and Body, shall never go right, or supple either to Hand or Heel.

Now, of what he will have done to work his Horse: first, to put him to the single Pillar, with a long Rope, and there pinch him with Spurs; which will do bravely with a Colt, that never knew the Spurs; he will surely throw him rather than be put upon the hand: Nay, a *Horse* that knows the Spurs, will never be put upon the Hand with that Invention.

Then to whip him about with the *bambriere*, to make him go half *Terra Terra*, and half *Corvets*; which is impossible, for they are two several Actions with his Legs: Besides, this excellent Lesson is in *Pluvinel's* Book; which he never used, but to a *Horse* that was almost drest; and it is Naught, then: Put him to *Corvets*, to settle him on the hand, says *La Broue*, which is in *La Broue's* Book, only for a *Horse* that is near Drest, and not for

for a *Colt*: Besides, some *Horses* will never go *Corvets*, do what you can: So this Method may spoil *Horses*, but shall never dress them, I assure you; and you may take my Word for it. He will (by his new Method) never Trot, Gallop or Walk a *Horse*; but no *Horse* in the World can be made without these Three nor without a *Cavezon*, stopping, and having his Head pull'd into the Turn.



A strange Conceit of a
G R E A T M A S T E R.

THERE was a great Master, that would ride his *Horses* twice a Day saying, that if he could dress a *Horse* in six Months, once a Day riding of them he was sure he could dress a *Horse* in three Months, riding them twice a Day; wherein he is much deceived: For a *Horse* being Flesh and Blood, cannot indure perpetual Travel with little Rest and no Exercise is more violent for a *Horse* than in the *Mannage*. Nay, of necessity, riding so much one Morning he will not recover it of a Day or two. And if a *Horse* oppose the Man, which

Horses will do at first, and are Vitious; you must correct him soundly; and, how will you ride him in the Afternoon again? Dull him you may, and take off his Spirit, make him hate the *Mannage*, and make him like a vaulting Horse, rather than like a live Horse. Nor can you ever give him his Meat, Water, or Rest, in order; the want of which must make him Sick, and subject to many Diseases; and shortly after, Death will follow: and there is your twice a Day riding him, which makes him fit for the Hunts-man to dress him for his Dogs.

Some say again, that they will ride no Horse twice a Day, but Horses that are very Vitious, and of great Strength: I have seen many *Horses* that are Vitious, but few of such great Strength. For, if the *Horse* be very Vitious, you must correct him soundly, and ride him so long till he obey you, in some small Measure; and then I am sure you have ridden so violently, and so long, as he will hardly be to be rid the next Morning; and less, to be rid any more that Day: and if the *Horse* be so docil as to obey in every thing, certainly the best way is to take but a little of him that Morning, to encourage him to do so again; and

and the more to encourage him, not to ride him until the next Morning again; so he will be Pleasant, Lively and in Lust, and take Pleasure in you, and the *Mannage*; and learn more thus in a Month riding him but once a Day, than he shall in three Months, riding him twice a Day.

Have not all Scholars Play-days? and certain Hours of Rest in their Days of Study? All Tradesmen, Holy-days to rejoice themselves in? Statesmen, Divertisements from Business? And good Preachers preach not every *Sunday*; have not Lawyers also their Terms, and Vacations, and even Carriers Horses rest *Christmas*, and other Holy-days; and so *Cart-Horses*, *Brewers Horses*, *Coach-Horses*, *Hackney-Horses*, *Running-Horses*? And shall only *Horses of Mannage* be Galley-Slaves? There is no Reason for that. No, nor *Dogs* can hunt every Day, or *Grey-Hounds* course every Day, or *Spaniels* range every Day; or *Hawks* fly every Day; there are hundred Examples of it, but these are sufficient to let you see the great Folly, and Ignorance, of those that will ride their *Horses of Mannage* twice a Day.

Just like the *Polander*, being Sick, whose Physician gave him nine Pills to

be taken, three every Night, for three Nights together; who very wisely considered, that if three Pills every Night, for three Nights together, would recover him; that then, taking all the Pills one Night would make him well presently. And so did, and had almost purged himself out of this World,

So any *Horseman* that will venture to make a *Horse* as well in three Months, with two Lessons a Day, as another in six Months, with one Lesson a Day, may be sure to kill his *Horse*, sooner than teach him, and to shew himself ridiculous in his Undertaking.



How I found out my

Method in the MANNAGE;

And that it is

The only WAY to Dress HORSES.

THERE is but one Truth in any thing; and that my Method is true, cannot be better demonstrated, than by Experience, which will clearly shew, that mine never misses

D

End,

End, as all others do; and so proves mine true, and theirs false. For, to say that some of them come near the Truth, is neither Commendation, nor Excuse: A Falshood within an Inch of the Truth, being as bad, as if it were an hundred Miles off.

I have practised, and studied *Horse-manship* ever since I was ten Years old; have rid with the best Masters of all Nations, heard them discourse at large, and tried their several Ways; have read all their *Italian, French, and English* Books, and some *Latin* ones; and in a Word, all that hath been writ upon that Subject, good and bad; and have bestowed many Thousands of Pounds in Horses, have spoiled many, and have been very long learning of this Art of *Horsemanship*.

But all that while I thought still, all was labour in vain; and that there was something, not found out, which they and their Books mist: Whereupon I began to consider so seriously, and study so earnestly, all the particulars that concern the *Mannage*; that at last I found this Method, which is as true, as it is new, and is the Quintessence of *Horsemanship*: For which I have left all others, as I had great Reason so to do, making with i

all manner of *Horses* whatsoever, of all Nations, and of all Dispositions; Strong, Weak; full of Fire, Dull and Lazy; even Mares, Geldings, and Bidets; and all that ever comes to my Hands.

I follow not the *Horse's* Disposition, as most do; but I make the Horse follow my Ways, and obey me: I seldom beat them or punish them with either Rod, or Spur, but when I meet with a great Resistance, and that rarely: And yet I must tell you, that I use Force, which they obey willingly, for the most part; and, however, all yield, and render themselves at last, with much Satisfaction to me; which I wish others may find in following their Ways.

But says one, doth your Lordship think, that both your Books would make me a *Horseman*? I answer; that they are written as plainly, and as clearly as possibly can be: There is in my *French Book*, Circles, and the Prints of *Horses* Shoes, to shew how his Legs should go; there is also exact Figures of all Postures, and of all Actions, both of Man and Horse, and more cannot be. But whether my Books will make you a *Horseman* or no, though they do as much as Books can do, I cannot tell; for you must have it all in

your Head ; and it may be you will not understand it. But put the Case you do, yet wanting the Practice, you cannot ride well ; and yet no Fault at all in my Books, but in you.

There are some Nations that think they can see nothing, but they can do it ; which must be by inspiration, by which I never saw any ride, though many pretend to preach by it. It is a long Study, and diligent Practice ; a long Habit and Custom, which doth all things in the World, and nothing done without it : For there is cunning in Daubing.

Do you think that an ignorant School-Boy can be as learned as a Doctor ? Or, let a skilful Musician write the rarest Book in the World, for Composing, or Singing ; can you imagine, that as soon as you have read his Book, you can do what he teacheth ? No truly ; and yet not the Book's fault, but yours, in being so partial to your self, as to think you can do any thing at the first Sight, without Practice or Study ; which would be a Miracle I never saw, or any Body shall ever see.

In the same manner, if a Lutenist should write a rare Book, can you expect, that as soon as you have read it, you

can

can play on the Lute ; because, it may be, you can jangle the Strings ?

But you say, you can ride : Truly, just as you jangle the Lute-Strings, and no otherwise. You have learnt in *Italy* and *France* that's something indeed : So many Crowns a Month, and the *Horse* did not throw you, and that is all.

Mr. Spenser, the best Scholar in all the Academy where he learned, and a fine Gentleman, who had been two Years there; when he came to ride one of my *Horses*, he could not make him go: His Brother-in-Law, being present, said to me ; *My Lord, you must excuse him, he hath not rid a great while.* But Mr. Spenser said (with a great Oath) *Brother, you are deceived ; for I know now, I could never ride.*

God knows how many young Gallants come newly out of Academies ; *English French, Irish, and Dutch* Gentlemen, that were famed for good *Horsemen*, and truly no piece of a *Horseman*, and rid the wofullest that could be ; and so did before me some Masters of Academies : And once two *Frenchmen* riding (God knows very meanly) were strangely laughed at, and that very worthily by two other *French Riders* that stood by.

But says one, *I can ride a Ready Horse*; wherein he is deceived; for a *Ready Horse* is the hardest of all to ride, because the least Motion is an absolute Command unto him, and an ignorant gives him such Counter-times, as he puts him quite out.

Mr. *Germain*, a fine Gentleman, and the best Scholar *Du Plessis* had in all his Academy, knew well the difficulty of riding a *Ready Horse*: For, to perswade him to ride one of mine, which he would not do; I told him, if you will but sit still, I warrant you the Horse will go well with you. *But a Man* (said he, with a great Oath) *cannot sit still*. Which was said knowingly, and like a *Horseman*; for, to sit still, belongs only to a great Master.

Another, because he hath rid a hundred Miles in a Day, (which a Post-Boy can do) thinks himself a *Horseman*; or, because he can run a Match with his Groom, or Leap a Ditch, or a Hedge, in Hunting and hold by the Mane, he thinks he is a *Horseman*; but his Hunts-Boy doth as much. And my Lord Mayor when he goes to weigh Butter, sits a Leg of either side the Horse very gravely an excellent *Horseman*! And I have seen

many

many Wenches ride astride, and gallop, and run their Horses, that could, I think, hardly ride a Horse well in the *Mannage*.

Are they not, in all Trades, bound Apprentices seven and nine Years; and many Bunglers of them too? And, in higher Professions, twenty and thirty Years is not too much, before they are great Masters in any one of them: And though *Horsemanship* be the hardest of all, yet many a Gentleman will ride the first Day as well as the greatest Master; but he is deceived, as well as those that think to buy with their Money, any Quality: For if good Qualities could be purchased with Money, every rich Citizen would be a fine Gentleman. Of which opinion that *French Cavalier* was not, who told me, commending my Method; *Par Dieu, il est bien hardi qui monte devant vous*, that is, he is very bold, that dares ride before you. And to the same purpose, *Signor del Campo*, an Italian rider at *Bruxels*, after he had seen my Horses, said; *Il faut tirer la Planche*, that is, the Bridge must be drawn up; for no *Horseman*, so good as you can come after.

There

There is no *Horseman* but shall make my Horses go, for his Use, either in a single Combat, or in the Wars, better than he shall any Bodies Horses else; and that's Sufficient: For, to make them go in Perfection in all *Ayres* as I can, were too much, and too great a Miracle: But let my Method be what it will, since every Man doth what he can; if any pleases himself with his own Opinions, though he dislikes my Way never so much, and should venture a thing he understands not; and say, that the *Mannage* is a foolish thing: It shall not displease me at all.

Quality: For if good Qualities could be purchased with Money, every rich Citizen would be a fine Gentleman. Of which opinion that I have said was not, who told me, commending my Method; For I said, if I should have money drawn out, that is, he is very bold, that does ride before you. And to the same purpose, I gave the same answer, when I was at Buxton, when the husbandman, my Horses, said, I have never seen you, that is, the Bridge must be drawn up; for my Horses, to go as you can.

come after you, and I shall be there.

OBSERVATIONS OF HORSES

OF THE SPANISH HORSE.

YOU must know, that of all Horses in the World, of what Nation soever they be, *Spanish* Horses are the wisest; far the wisest, and strangely wise, beyond any Man's Imagination; but I must tell you, they are not the easier drest for that: Because they observe too much with their Eyes, and their Memories are too good, and so conclude with their Judgments too soon, without the Man, reckoning without their Host; whereas they should follow, and obey, his Hand and Heel; and that not by Roar neither, but by Art, which is an habit got by many Lessons methodically taught.

If

It he be well chosen, I assure you, he is the noblest Horse in the World: First, There is no Horse so curiously shaped, all over from Head to Croup: He is the most beautiful that can be; for he is not so Thin, and Lady-like, as the *Barb*; nor so Gross as the *Neapolitan*; but between both. He is of great Spirit, and of great Courage, and Docil; hath the proudest Walk, the proudest Trot, and best action in his Trot; the loftiest Gallop, and the swiftest Careers; and is the lovingest and gentlest Horse, and fittest for a King in a Day of Triumph to shew himself to his People, or at the head of an Army, of any Horse in the World.

Therefore no Horse so fit to breed on, as a *Spanish* Horse; either for the *Mannage*, the War, Ambling, for the Pad; Hunting, or for Running Horses: *Conqueror* was of a *Spanish* Horse, *Shotten-Herring* was of a *Spanish* Horse, *Butler* was of a *Spanish* Horse, and *Peacock* was of a *Spanish* Mare: And these beat all the Horses in their time, so much, as no Horse ever ran near them.

I say, he is absolutely the best Stallion in the World, for all those several things I have formerly named, if you do wisely appropriate such *Mares* to him, as shall

be fit for such Uses as you would have your Breed; and so he is fit for all Breeds, but to breed *Cart-Horses*.

The King of *Spain* hath many Races, but his best is at *Cordoua* in *Andaloxia*, where he hath above three hundred *Mares* and *Colts*, as my Lord *Cottingham* told me; and, besides those of his Majesty, there are other most excellent Races, not only of Noblemen, but also of private Gentlemen.

For the prices, the Earl of *Claringdon*, now Lord Chancellor of *England*, told me, that when he was Embassador in *Spain*, Sir *Benjamin Wright*, a Merchant there that loves Horses, sold a Couple of little *Spanish* Horses for a great Price: And he says, (and many others confirm it for a great Truth) that three hundred, and four hundred Pistoles for a Horse, is a common Price and Rate, at *Madrid*; and the Marquess of *Seralvo* told me, that a *Spanish* Horse, called *Il Bravo*, sent to the Arch-Duke *Leopold*, his Master, was held worth as much as a Manor of a thousand Crowns a Year, and that he hath known Horses at seven hundred, eight hundred, and a thousand Pistoles.

A Gentleman told me, that he knew a Cavalier in *Spain*, who offered another three hundred Pistoles, but to let him ride his Horse one Afternoon; and the owner had Reason to refuse it: For it was to go to the *Juego de Toros*, where he might have been killed: Many of the finest Horses in the World being killed at that Sport, which is the greatest Pity that can be.

You see that a *Spanish* Horse is dear Ware; and then reckon his Journey from *Andalozia* to *Bilbo*, or *St. Sebastian*, which is the next Port for *England*, and is four hundred Miles at least, and a Horse cannot travel above ten Miles a Day with your Groom, and your Farrier at least, besides the Casualty of Lameness, Sickness, and Death; so that if he come safe to you, yet he will be a very dear Horse, I assure you: And these are great Truths of the *Spanish* Horse.



Of the *B A R B.*

THE *Barb* is next to the *Spanish* Horse for Wisdom, but not near so Wise, and that makes him much easier

to be dress'd: Besides, he is of a gentle Nature, docil, nervous, and light.

He is as fine a *Horse* as can be, but somewhat Slender, and a little Lady-like; and is so lazy and negligent in his Walk, as he will stumble in a Bowling-Green; he trots like a Cow, and gallops Low, and no Action in any of those Actions: But commonly he is Sinewy, and Nervous, and hath a clean Strength, is excellently Winded, and good at Length, to endure great Travel; and very apt to learn, and easie to be dress'd, being (for the most part) of a good Disposition, excellent Apprehension, Judgment, and Memory; and when he is search'd, and wakened, no *Horse* in the World goes better in the *Mannage*, in all *Ayres* whatsoever, and rarely upon the Ground in all kinds.

The *Mountain-Barbs*, they say, are the best; I believe they are the largest, but, for my part, I rather desire a middling *Horse*, or a less *Horse*, which are cheap enough in *Barbary*, as I have been informed, both by many Gentlemen, and many Merchants; for they say, that in *Barbary* you may buy a very fine *Barb* for twenty, twenty-five, or thirty Pounds at the most; but then your Journey is somewhat great; not by Sea; for, from

E

Tunis,

Tunis, to *Marseilles* in *France*, is no great Voyage; but from *Marseilles* to *Calais* by Land, you go all the length of *France*, and at *Calais* they are ship'd for *England*.

You must have an excellent Esquire, a Farrier, and one Groom, and hire other Grooms as you go; but take heed, that those mean Rogues run not away with some of your Horses; and because there is no trusting of them, your *English* Farrier, and your *English* Groom, must always lie in the Stable, and none of those Fellows; but the Gentleman of your Horse, which ought to be a good *Horseman*, must order that carefully.

If you would go another way to work, and a shorter Voyage, then send into *Languedoc* and *Provence*, where many Gentlemen buy *Barbs* of two, three, and four Years old at *Marseilles*, and keep them two or three Years, and then sell them; which *Barbs* you may buy for forty or fifty Pistoles a Piece, and as fine Horses as can be: But he whom you send must be very skilful to chuse well, and to take heed that they be right *Barbs*; for I have heard, that many in those Countries, about *Marseilles*, when many *Barbs* come out of *Barbary*, thrust in *Colts* of

their

their own Breed amongst them for *Barbs*, and so sell them.

When I was at *Paris*, there came twenty five *Barbs* (as they said) nothing but Skin and Bones, and they were sold for twenty five Pistoles a *Horse*: My Lord Viscount *Montague* bought nine, as I remember; for I was with him, and help'd to chuse some for him, and one of them did win many Matches: But truly, if I had had a Million, I would not have bought one of them, for they were very ordinary *Horses*; Nor do I think they were right *Barbs*, neither by their shape, nor price, but bred in some Islands thereabouts; for, if a Man be at great Charges, would either have an extraordinary *Horse*, or none.

I had lately a Letter from a *Horse-man* at *Paris*, a *French-Man*, that gives me intelligence of *Horses*, That a Merchant at *Paris* had two *Barbs*, the finest that ever he saw, six Years old a piece, but not drest at all, and held them at two hundred Pistoles a piece: By which, you may see, that right *Barbs*, and fine ones, are very dear, as all good things

The *Barb* is not so fit a *Horse* for a Gallion for the *Mannage*, as for *Run-*

ning-Horses; for he gets long and loose Horses, therefore do not breed of him for the *Mannage*, except he be a short Horse from the Head to the Croup, strong Ramase, and Racourfy, and of a Superfluity of Spirit, which few *Barbs* have; and therefore breed of a *Spanish* Horse, with choice *English* Mares; and if you have a delicate well-chosen *Dutch* Mare or two, that makes an excellent Composition for the *Mannage*.

I am of opinion, and believe, that there never came out of *Barbary*, the best Horses that Country affords; not but that they may be had: But the Case is this; those that bring *Barbs* out of *Barbary*, are either *French* Horse-Courfers that trade in *Barbary*, or Merchants.

To begin with the Horse-Courfers, they always buy those Horses that are cheapest for their Advantage: For if they bought of great Prices, it would not quit Cost, and so they buy the worst and meanest of *Barbs*: And as for the Merchants, they want skill: Besides, they will buy the cheapest too, for their Advantage, because they know not well how to put off Horses of Price; and so they buy but the worst and meanest of *Barbs*; which makes me believe absolutely, that the

the best *Barbs* do not come over: For, did not I see daily at *Antwerp* the Horse-Courfers of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, that go into *England* every Year to buy Horses, that they bring over the meanest and worst Horses and Geldings that are in the Kingdom, and meerly to buy at easy Rates, that they may put them off with Advantage? For, if they should buy in *England* Horses of one hundred, one hundred and fifty, and two hundred Pounds a Horse, which price hath been given both at *Malten* and *Pankrich* Fairs, those great Prices would not go off there, where Money is so scarce; and so they would be undone; and therefore they buy of small Prices.



Of the

ENGLISH HORSE.

THE *English* Horse is less wise than the *Barb*, fearful and skittish, for the most part; and dogged and rebellious to the *Mannage*, and not commonly so apt to learn: But those they call *English* Horses, are so compounded of Horses of all Countries, that they always participate

E 3

some

something of their Sires; and so, that may somewhat alter the Case.

Certainly *English* Horses are the best Horses in the whole World for all uses whatsoever, from the *Cart* to the *Mannage*; and some are as beautiful *Horses* as can be any where, for they are bred out of all the *Horses* of all Nations: But if you would buy for the *Mannage* at Fairs, you must go to *Rowel Fair*, *Harborow*, *Fair*, and *Melton Fair*, to *Northampton* and *Leicester-shire*; but *Northampton*, they say, is the best.

You must buy such Horses as they sell, for the *Cart* and *Coach*, which are the best for the *Mannage*: Do not think to buy delicate shap'd Horses, like the *Spanish* Horse, *Barb* or *Turk*; but they are handsomer *Horses* than commonly *Dutch* Horses are; chuse a short trust Horse, with good Feet and Legs, full of Spirit and Action, and Lively; and if he leap of himself, so much the better. If your *Horseman* hath skill to buy you such, they cannot do amiss for the *Mannage*, and will prove most admirable Horses, both in all *Agres*, and upon the Ground, but I would not breed of them by no means.

At *Molten Fair*, for the most part, they are young *Stone-Horses*, and some Geld-

ings,

ings, but fitter for the Pad, and Hunting, than for the *Mannage*; *Rippon* Fair is but the remnant of *Molten* Fair, and commonly but Geldings and Nags; those Fairs are in *Yorkshire*; *Lenton* Fair is in *Nottinghamshire*, and is a great Fair of all sorts of *Horses*, but especially Geldings and Nags, fitter for the Pad, and Galloping, than for the *Mannage*; you may also find some *Stone-Horses* there.

In *Staffordshire* there is a great Fair at *Pankridge*; but it is, for the most part, of *Colts*, and young *Horses*, though sometimes (by chance) there are also others. The other Fairs in the Northern parts, which are many, are not worth naming.

I am very ignorant of the West-Country, where my Lord *Paulett's* Ancestors had a good breed of *Horses*; and by chance, now and then my Lord of *Pembroke* did breed, but I never heard of any rare *Horses* of his Race.

In *Worcestershire*, and in the Vale of *Epsam*, there are good strong *Cart-Horses*; in *Cornwall* there are good Naggs, and in *Wales* excellent good ones; but in *Scotland* the *Galloways* are the best Naggs of them all.

There

There were, before the Wars, many good Races in *England*, but they are all now ruined ; and the many new breeders of *Horses* come up presently after the Wars, are (I doubt) none of the best ; for, I believe, their Stallions were not very pure, because the Men that did govern in those Days, were not so Curious as the great Lords, and great Gentry were heretofore, neither would they be at the Cost; and besides, they have not Knowledge of *Horses* as in other Countries: For, though every Man pretends to it, yet, I assure you, there are very few that know *Horses*, as I have heard the King say: Since whose Restauration, the probability of getting good Breeds again, is very great.

For *English* Mares, there are none like them in the World to breed on ; but then you must chuse them fit for such *Horses* as you would breed ; as for Example, if you would breed for the *Mannage*, the Mares must have fine Forehands, but not too long Necks ; fine Heads, and well hung on ; and their Necks rightly turn'd, broad Breasts, good Eyes, and great Bodies, that the Foles may have the more room to lie in: They must have good Hoëffs, short and bending Pasterns, and are to be short from the Head to

the

the Croup, and Stuffy. This shape fits the *Mannage* best; and if your *Mares* be thus chosen, it makes no matter what Colour they are of, nor what Marks they have, nor what Tails and Manes, so they be full of Strength, and a superfluity of Spirit, and not above six or seven Years old. But I must tell you, that if you had two or three fine *Dutch* Mares, shaped as I formerly told you, it makes a fine Composition with a *Spanish* Horse, for the *Mannage*; and a *Spanish* Horse with such *English* Mares as I have told you now, are not only for the *Mannage*, but in a manner for all Uses.

If you would have *Mares* to breed Running-Horses of, then they must be shaped thus; as light as possible, large and long, but well shaped; a short Back, but long Sides, and a little Long-Legged; their Breast as narrow as may be, for so they will Gallop the lighter and nimbler, and Run the faster; for the lighter and thinner your Breed for galloping is the better. Your Stallion, by any means, must be a *Barb*, and somewhat of the shape that I have described the *Mares* to be of: For a *Barb* that is a Jade, will get a better Running-Horse, than the best Running-Horse in *England*:

As Sir *John Fennick* told me, who had more Experience of Running-Horses than any Man in *England*; for he had more rare running *Horses* than all *England* besides; and the most part of all the famous Running-Horses in *England* that ran one against another, were of his Race and Breed.

Some commend the *Turk* very much for a Stallion to breed Running-Horses; but they are so scarce, and rare, that I can give no Judgment of them: And therefore I advise you to the *Barb*, which, I believe, is much the better *Horse* to breed Running-Horses.



Of the

F R I S O N.

THE *Frison* is less wise than the *English*, but no *Horse* goes better in the *Mannage*, either upon the Ground, *Terra a Terra*, or in all *Ayres*; and no *Horse* is of more use, either for a single Combat on Horse-back, or in the Wars for the shock.

He is hardy, can live on any thing, and will endure either Heats or Colds; and on no *Horse* whatsoever doth a Man appear

near more a Sword-Man, than on this Horse, being so quiet, so bold, and so assured.

He is also manly, and fit for every thing but running away; though he will run fast for a while, yet, I doubt, not long; because his Wind is not like that of *Barbs*: Yet a heavy Man well armed upon a *Barb*, and the same Weight upon a *Dutch Horse*, the *Dutch Horse's* Strength is so much above the *Barb's*, as, compared thus, I believe the *Dutch Horse* may run as fast, and as long as the *Barb*; for the *Barb's* Wind serveth to no purpose, when his Strength is not able to carry his Weight: And thus the *Barb* will want his little light Jockey on him, with a couple of Trenchers for a Saddle, and a Lute-string in his Mouth for a Bit.

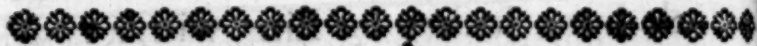


O F T H E
DENMARK and HOLLAND
H O R S E.

THE *Denmark-Horse* is an excellent Horse, in the same kind, and commonly apter to learn, and lighter: There are

are more leaping *Horses* of those Countries and kinds, than of any *Horses* in the World.

But now, to make more profit, they Geld all in *Holland*, for Coaches, and to keep the Trade, sending five Thousand every Year into *France*, and divers other places, that you can hardly get a Stone-*Horse* worth any thing; their Colts at two Years old Spring their Mares, and then they Geld them; so, Avarice spoils their Breed. A Town, will join, and give above two hundred Pounds for a Stallion; but then he covers all the Mares that belong to that Town, like a Town-Bull,



O F T H E
A L M A I N or G E R M A N
H O R S E.

TH O S E that write, that they are like *Flanders Horses*, are much deceived; they mean the common Country *Cart-Horse*: But let me inform them; there are few Princes in *Germany*, but have excellent races and breeds of *Horses*; and their Stallions are always either Cour-
fers

ers of *Naples*, *Spanish Horses*, *Turks* in abundance, and *Barbs*; and breeding of these Stallions, their Mares come to be very fine, like their Sires, and very pure Breeds.

I had one, no *Neapolitan* in the World like him, for Shape, Stature, Colour, Strength, Agility, and good Nature; he would make thirty two *Capriols*, the highest that ever I saw, and the justest, without any help in the World; and then upon the Ground, to gallop and change, and go *Terra a Terra*, it was another Action than ever any other Horse did, being in some manner above the rate of Horse-kind: This was a *German Horse*; but his Sire was a Courser of *Naples*.

I had once two Horses of the Count of *Oldenburg's* most excellent Breed, as fine Horses as ever I saw, and one was the hopefullest that could be seen. That Prince was pleased to present those Horses to me, and said, if I liked them not, he would send me others: which was like a Prince, and most generous. The Prince of *West-Friesland* did also send me a very fine Horse.

F Of



Of the

COURSER of NAPLES.

I Have not seen many of them ; but, *La Broue*, in his Book, says, that the Race was mightily decayed ; and that was almost an hundred Years ago : And *Pluvinel*, in his Book, says also, that we have not now such *Neapolitans* as we have had ; for all the Races are bastarded, and spoiled.

The Arch-Duke *Leopold*, when he governed the Countries of *Flanders*, *Brabant*, &c. sent into *Italy* for eight or ten Coursers whilst I was at *Antwerp*, which cost him above three hundred Pounds a Horse, Journey and all. They were great vast Horses, with huge Heads, and thick Necks ; heavy, with no Spirit in the World, nor any Strength ; dull heavy Jades, fitter for a Brewers-Cart than the Saddle : And the Marquês *De Carasene*, a *Spaniard*, that governs all those Countries, a little Man, but both witty, and wise ; an excellent Soldier, both for Conduct and Courage, and a good *Horseman* (which few

few *Spaniards* are) and my very noble Friend, told me, that the last Wars in *Naples* hath ruined the King of *Spain's* Race of *Horses* in that Kingdom; but that they began now to repair it, and that he hoped within fourteen Years it may be established as formerly it hath been.

Thus you see things do not stand at a Stay: For what hath been formerly, is not so now; as in the *Neapolitan*, and in all the rest of the Races of *Italy*, which are decayed. The Duke of *Florence* hath the best Race at this time in those parts.



Of the

TURKISH HORSE.

I Have seen very few of them; but, two Merchants brought three *Turkish* Horses to *Antwerp*, very fine Horses, but oddly shaped; their Heads were very fine, but like a Camel's Head: They had excellent Eyes, and thin Necks, excellently risen; somewhat great Bodies; the Croup like a Mule's; Leggs not great, but marvellous Sinewy; good Pasterns,

F 2

and

and good Hooffs; and their Backs risen somewhat like a Camel.

I had a Groom, a heavy *English* Clown, whom I set upon them, and they made no more of him, than if he had been as light as a Feather.

They appeared not so fit for the *Manage*, as for to run a *Course*, which I believe, they would have scoured; they trotted very well, and no ambling at all.

The Horses about *Constantinople*, Mr. *Blundevil* says, are very ill favoured Jades; but he was mightily deceived with his old Authors: For, I have spoken with many Gentlemen that have been there, as likewise with diverse Merchants that came from thence; who all agree, that there are there the most beautiful *Horses* in the World; saying, that in soil time, there are many Hundred teddered, and so shift Places when they have eaten that bare: Every *Horse* hath a Man to look to him, and every Man a little Tent to lie in; and they say, that it is one of the most glorious Sights to see those *Horses* that can be; and the most beautiful *Horses* in the World. And certainly they are brave *Horses*!

The Price of one of these *Horses*, is about a Hundred, or a Hundred and fifty Pound

Pounds a *Horse*; and there is great Difficulty to get a Pass; for the *Grand Signior* is very strict, in not suffering any of his *Horses* to go out of his Territories.

When that Difficulty is over, there is another; which is, if you have not a *Turk* or two for your Convoy, they will be taken from you by the Way: There is also the Difficulty of a long Journey, and the Danger of Sicknes or Laming; For, you must come thorough *Germany*, which is a long Way; and you must have very careful Men to conduct them, a good Groom, an expert Farrier; and by no Means to suffer any to shoe them but him; for when they perceive there is a fine Horse they will hire a *Farrier* to prick him, or spoil him, that they may have him; which is practised daily.



Of the

ARABIAN HORSE.

HE is nurs't with Camels Milk; there are the strangest Reports in the World of those *Horses*; for I have been told by many Gentlemen of Credit, and

by very many Merchants, that the Price of right *Arabians* is, one Thousand, two Thousand, and three Thousand Pounds a Horse, (an intolerable, and an incredible Price) and that the *Arabs* are as careful, and diligent, in keeping the *Genealogies* of their *Horses* as any Princes can be in keeping any of their own *Pedigrees*.

They keep the *Genealogies* of their *Horses* with *Medals*; And when any of their Sons come to be Men, then their Fathers give them two Suits of *Arms* with two *Scimetars*, and one of these *Horses*, and prays to God to bless them; That is every one's Portion, and his Horse lies always in the next Room to him, (I believe, not above Stairs.) They talk they will ride Fourscore Miles in a Day, and never draw the Bridle: When I was young, I could have bought a *Nagg* for ten Pound, that would have done as much very easily.

I never saw any but one of these *Horses*, which Mr. *John Markham*, a Merchant, brought over, and said, he was a right *Arabian*: He was a Bay, but a little *Horse*, and no Rarity for Shape; for I have seen many *English Horses* far finer. Mr. *Markham* sold him to King *James* for five Hundred Pounds; and being trained up for a Course, when he came to run, every Horse beat him.

Of the

HUNGARIAN HORSE.

They are not worth speaking of; but if you will believe those of that Nation, they will magnifie them extreamly; and so will all Nations whatsoever mightily commend their own Horses; But I have seen *Hungarian Horses*, and they are not worth Commendations, I assure you.

Of the

POLANDER HORSE.

When the King of *Poland* sent an Extraordinary Embassador, with many of his Nobility and Gentry of *Poland*, to conduct the Princess *Mary*, eldest Daughter to the Duke of *Nevers* from *Paris* to *Poland* to be his Queen, I was then at *Paris* and saw his Entry; which was one of the most glorious and manly Sights that ever I saw, after the *Po-*
lack

laek Way, with very rich Cloaths, *Polack* Caps and great Feathers; and all the Masters of Academies were commanded to wait on the Embassador, with all their Scholars, and Horses, in their rich Cloaths and Saddles, all *A la Mode*, their Manes full of Ribbons.

I protest in comparison of the *Polacks* they lookt like *Hobby-Horses*; not but that their *Horses* were better; the Difference was merely in the manly Habit of the *Polanders*, who were also very Rich.

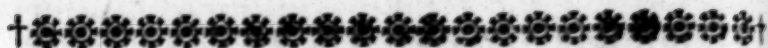
But their *Horses* I do not like at all; for they are, for their Shape, just as the common and ordinary *Horses* and *Geldings* in *England*; and the Bitts they use, are just like our *Snaffles*, and have only Rings for the Bridle to be fastned to, as ours are wanting those little Crosses that ours have. But if you will believe the *Polanders*, they will tell you, that their *Horses* are the bravest *Horses* in the World, which I have not Faith to believe: For, when I say, (and it hath been an old Saying) That the *Poland Horse* is the best Horse in the World; we mean the Men Fight on *Horseback*, and not the Horse

Of the

SWEDISH HORSE.

I Had the honour to wait on the Queen of Sweden when she was at *Antwerp*, and she used me very graciously, and civilly; and an extraordinary Lady, I assure you, she is in all Things: But for the *Swedish Horses* she had for the Saddle, there was no great Matter in them; She had eight Coach-Horses, large and nobly shaped, of the Count of *Oldenburg's* Breed, which were beyond any *Couriers* that ever yet I saw: their Colours *Isabels*, with long white Manes, Tails and Toppings; and these she sent into *Spain*, for a present to the *Catholic King*: And it was a Kingly present, fit for such a Queen to present, and for so great a King to receive.

Of



OF WHAT
 S T A T U R E
 A
HORSE is best,
 EITHER FOR
 The *WAR*, or for a *SINGLE COMBAT*,
 OR FOR
ANYTHING ELSE.

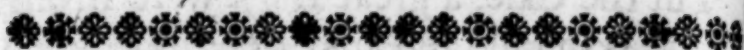
THere are great Disputes amongst Cavaliers about this Business: I will not trouble you much about their Arguments, but only deliver unto you my Opinion. Those that are for high and large *Horses*, say, they are strong for the Shock; But they must know, that all large *Horses* are not strong; nay, for the most part they are not only the weakest *Horses*, but commonly of no Spirit or Action.

Put

Put the Case, a great *Horse* were strong, yet he is so tall, and his Strength diffused, and indeed so out of his Strength, that a middling *Horse* (*Entre deux selles*) or either a less *Horse* being under him, and in his Strength, would certainly overthrow him; So that a middling *Horse*, or a less, is best for the War, or a single Combat, without all doubt.

Middling *Horses*, and less *Horses* have, for the most part, both Strength, Spirit, and Agility, and not one in an Hundred but proves well; when of large *Horses* not one in a Thousand does: Nay, the middling or less *Horse*, is best for all Things; for the Padd, Buck Hunting, Hawking Naggs or Geldings; for Hunting *Horses*, *Horses* for Winter-galloping on the High Way, many Miles; for the Coach, for the Cart, for any Thing. And if they should fall, a little *Horse* would do the Rider less hurt than a greater *Horse*, to lie upon him. Geldings and Gelt Naggs, are fitter for great Journies, or Hunting, or Hawking in Summer, than Ston'd *Horses*; for their Heat, with the Heat of the Weather, soon heats their Feet, and founders them; whereas Geldings are colder, and so travel better, and do not tire so soon in the Heat of Summer.

That



THAT THERE ARE

Few Good HORSES.

NOW I must tell you, that there are good and bad Horses of all Countries in the World; but there are more bad than good, as there are of Men: And though there be Millions of Painters, yet there was but one *Vandike* in many Ages, or, I believe shall be: The like in Musick, in Horsemanship, in Weapons, and in Horses: for a rare *Horse*, in any kind, is a difficult Business to find, I assure you: It is a hard Thing to find fit *Horses* for the *Mannage*, either upon the Ground or in *Ayres*. It is true, Art doth much, but Nature is the Ground for Art to work on; for, without it, Art can do but little.

I dare undertake to make a Cow go just in the *Mannage*, but when I have done that, it is but a Cow; And so a Jade that is dress'd, he is but a Jade when you have done all you can.

I assure you, it is a very hard Thing to find a good Padd-Nag, or a good Padd-Gelding to amble finely upon the Hanches, and from his Amble to his Gallop, or from

from his Amble to his Trot, and firm on the Hand: Upon the Bitt I have seen very few worth any thing, and as few good Buck Hunters, or Hawking Naggs, or Winter Hunting Geldings, or Horses to gallop or run surely upon all Grounds, plowed Lands, Moors, Parks, Forests, and every where, with a Snaffle, and a *Scotch* Saddle, the Reins slack in his Neck, which makes him very much the safer for his Rider, because he gallops upon the Hanches.

Let me tell you, that Running-Horses are the most easily found, and of the least Use, commonly they run upon *Heaths*, (a Green Carpet) and must there run all upon the Shoulders, which in troublesome Grounds is ready to break one's Neck, and of no Use; Though I love the Sport of a Running-Horse very well, and think I am as good a *Jockey* as any, and have ridden many hundred Matches, and seen the best *Jockeys*, and studied it more than I think they have done.

You see how difficult a Thing it is to have a good *Horse* in any kind, for any Thing: Therefore I conclude, that a knowing *Horseman* is not so happy for *Horses*, as a Citizen of *London*, that knows Nothing, more than to buy a *Horse* in

Smithfield, for Eight Pound Ten Shillings or thereabouts, to carry him to *Nottingham*, or to *Salisbury*; and let him have never so many Faults, his Ignorance finds none; Wherein he is very happy.



M O R E

OBSERVATIONS

CONCERNING

H O R S E S.

THE *Turks* are the most curious in keeping their Horses of any Nation; and value them, and esteem them most. They have all the Ways of dressing them, and keeping them clean, that can be imagined; They cloath them first with a fine *Linnen Cloath* and *Hood* next their Skin; then with a *Hair-Cloath* and *Hood*, lined with *Felt*, over their *Linnen Cloath* and *Hood*: And all these are made so fit, as to cover their Breasts, and to come pretty low down to their Leggs. There cannot be a better Way than this for their Cloathing.

The

The *Spaniards* are also very curious about their *Horses* in all things; and their Grooms so diligent; as they never stay long out of the Stable, but are always doing something about them; and especially are curious about their Manes, Toppings, and Tails, making them clean divers Ways; washing them and pleating them. They esteem highly their *Horses*, and no Nation loves them better. The Master is continually in the Stable, to see the Grooms do their Duty; but, for all that, the *Spaniards* and the *Turks* are none of the best *Horsemen*; they Ride short, have strange Spurs and Saddles, especially Bitts, which are most abominable.

The *Italians* are very careful and neat about their *Horses*; but they have of late lost their *Latin* in Riding, or else they never had it; and our Ignorance made us think they did rarely.

Some of the *French* are curious in keeping and dressing their *Horses*; but, for the most part, not: They highly esteem *Horses*, and will give great Prices for them. But *French* Grooms never rub a *Horse's* Leggs well.

The *Alamains*, or *High-Germans*, love *Horses* well: Some say, they are very curious, but methinks not. They commend

their Grooms extreamly, but I think they do not deserve it. Certainly the best Grooms are *English* Grooms; but no Grooms are good, except the Master looks strictly after them; for, the Master's Eye makes the Horse well drest, as, according to the Proverb, *The Master's Eye makes the Horse Fat.*

Denmark, Sweden, Poland, Transylvania, Hungary, and all those Countries, are much like the *Alamains*, for little Curiosities, in keeping and dressing their Horses; and all their Riding alike: No Man in *Germany* will ride without a *Cavazone*, though he knows not the Use of it at all, nor what to do with it. In *Flanders, Brabant,* and those Parts; as also in *Holland,* and those parts, they are much like the *Germans.*

The Emperor of *Muscovy*, I have heard, hath a Stable of Horses, and a *French* Rider: He hath some Horses come out of *Tartaria* and *Turkey*, but none good in his own Country. A Rider is of no great use there, except he could dress and make a ready Bear; of which there is Plenty, and they have noble Races of those Beasts.

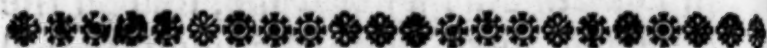
In the *Mogul's* Country there is Nothing to dress, except you would dress *Elephants*; and the best Horses they have come out of *Persia.*

Sir

Sir *Walter Rawley* told me, that in the *West Indies* there were the finest shap'd Horses, and the finest Colours in the World, beyond all *Spanish Horses* and *Barbs* that ever he saw; and they knew there so little the Use of Horses, that they killed them for their Skins.

In *Denmark* there are excellent good Horses; and in *Norway* little strong Horses, but not so purely shap'd. I saw Six *Norway Horses* in a Coach, very little Horses, *Isabells*, with white Manes, and white Tails; some of their Heads are a little too big; but very fine little Horses and strong.

For *Iseland* Horses, they are all curled like their Dogs, and so curled, that no Curry-Comb can dress them, nor any thing else: And they are but dull Jades.



W H A T

S T A L L I O N

Is best for the

M A N N A G E,

The Ordering of him, before he

Mounts the MARES.

What Kind of *Mares*, when, and how, they
should be put together for Generation.

THE best *Stallion* in our Island, is,
a well shap'd *Spanish* Horse, with
a Superfluity of Spirit and Strength,
docil, and of an excellent Disposition,
and good Nature, which is the chief
thing in a *Stallion*; for if he be of an ill
Disposition, Vicious or Melancholy, all
his Offsprings will participate of it, and
will never be drest, or made perfect Hor-
ses as they should be.

He ought to be of a good Colour, to

give

give the Race a good Dye; and well markt, to agree with most Mens Opinions: Though Marks and Colours be nothing at all to know the Goodness of a *Horse*, nor Shape neither; but, the Abundance of Spirits, and a strong Chine, be the most considerable: Yet, by any Means, I would have him perfectly shap'd, for the beautifying of your Race; for a handsome *Horse* may be as good as an ill-favoured *Horse*; and an ill-favoured *Horse* as good as a handsome *Horse*.

I would have you feed him four or five Months before he covers, with good *Oats*, *Pease* and hull'd *Beans*, (and Bread if you think good) with sweet *Hay*, and good *Wheat Straw*, and some *Barley* now and then for Variety; and ride him out to be watered every Day twice, and keep him out some little Time, only to walk him; but not too long, for that will weaken him too much.

Why not breed of a *Neapolitan*? They are too gross *Horses*; and we breed too big *Horses* in *England*, by reason of the Moisture both of Air and Ground.

Why not Breed of a *Barb*? They are too slender, and too Lady like, for the *Mannage*, though themselves the best in the World for it; but their *Off-spring*,
are

are commonly loose and weak *Horses*, fitter for *Running-Horses*, than the *Mannage*; so the *Spanish Horse* is in the Middle, (where Vertue lies) neither too gross, nor too slender, and the finest shap'd *Horse* in the World: And therefore have no other Stallion.

The fittest *Mares* for the *Mannage*, must be short from the Head to the Croup; curious Forehands, but not too long; fine Heads, and well hung on; good Bodies, short rather than long; short and good Leggs; short Pasterns and Bending; good Feet, short Backs, full of Spirits and Strength; and good Natures.

No where better *Mares* than in *England*, if they be well chosen. Yet I must tell you, I could wish you to have a Couple of fine shap'd little *Dutch Mares*, which is a fine Composition, with a *Spanish Horse* for the *Mannage*.

For their Colours: Let them be such as most Men like; though I value not that at all.

Their Age; five, six, or seven Years old; and the Stallion not to be too old, except Necessity otherwise force you.

The Time of the Year; in *May*, about the middle of that Month, that the *Foles* may fall in *April*, because else they will have no Grass.

Put

Put the *Stallion* to the *Mares*, thus ; take off his hinder Shoes, and bring him near where the *Mares* are, and there let him cover a *Mare* in Hand twice, which will make him wise ; and instantly pull of his Bridle, and put him to the *Mares* : Which *Mares* must all be put in a convenient *Closse*, that may feed them well for six Weeks at least.

Put those *Mares* that have newly Foleed, and those that are with *Fole*, and those that are Barren, all to him ; for there is no Danger in it. This Way is so natural, as they are all served in their height of Pride ; for, the *Horse* never mounts them until they woo him to it extreemly.

When he hath covered them all, then he tries them all over again, and those that will take the *Horse*, he covers them ; and those that will not, he lets them alone : And when he knows he hath finished his Work, he beats the Pale to be gone, which is time for him ; then you must take him up, and you shall find him lean enough, nothing but Skin and Bones, and his Mane and Tail will moot off : If you give him too many *Mares*, then he will serve you the less Time ; be so lean and weak, that you will very hardly recover him against the next Year, or
Covering

Covering time. Therefore ten or twelve *Mares* is enough.

I had forgot to tell you, that you must have a little House with a *Manger*, to feed him with Corn and Bread, during the Covering Time, to defend him from the Heat of the Sun, and Rain, which would much infeeble him: And you must have a Man always to attend him and the *Mares*; and for that Purpose he must have a little *Hutt* built, to be there Day and Night; not only to tell you how they are served, but that no other *Horse* comes to the *Mares*, or other *Mares* put to the *Horse*; and for many other Accidents wherewith he is to acquaint you. And when you have taken up the *Stallion*, then remove the *Mares* into a good and fresh Pasture.

This is the true Way for covering the *Mares*; for, Nature is wiser than Art in the Act of Generation; and by this Way, I dare say, there shall not of a Dozen *Mares*, two fail.

I must tell you, that you must never have a *Stallion* of your own Breed, because they are too far removed from the Purity, and Head, of the Fountain, which is a pure *Spanish Horse*: Besides, should the Stallions be of your own Breed, in
three

three or four Generations they would come to be Cart-Horses ; so gross, and ill-favoured would they be : or at least, just such *Horses* as are bred in that Country, so soon will they degenerate : Therefore, have still a fresh *Spanish Horse* for the Stallion.

But you cannot breed better, than to breed of your own *Mares* that you have bred ; and let their Fathers cover them ; for there is no Incests in *Horses* : And thus they are nearer, by a Degree, to the Purity, since a fine *Horse* got them, and the same fine Horse covers them again.

If any Man will Dispute against this Truth, (if he be not obstinate in his Errors) let him read my first Book of *Horse-manship* in *French*, where I treat of Breeding ; and there are Reasons that may convert him, if he considers my great Experience.

For



F O R

The Housing, Feeding, and Ordering of

C O L T S.

YOU must wean the Foles, and take them from their Dams, when cold Weather comes in, which is about *Mar-tlemas*; and have a convenient House to put them in, with a low Rack and Manger fit for them: For the first Year put the *Horse-Colts* and *Fillies*, all together; and have always good and fresh *Litter* for them, good sweet *Hay*, and *Wheat-Bran*, and good *Oats*; the *Wheat-Bran* makes them drink well, and gives them good Bodies.

In a fair Day, let them now and then go out in some inclosed Yard, to play, and rejoice themselves; and then put them up again carefully, that they be not Hurt.

The next Summer, when Grass is plentiful, put them out in some dry Ground, where the Grass is short, and sweet; for if a Colt fills his Belly, once in twenty

Four

Four Hours, it is sufficient; and good Water they must have. The Colts must be by themselves, and the Fillies by themselves, separated.

The next Winter, at *Martlemas*, then take up again the Colts, bring them into the Stable, and use them, in all Kinds, like the older Horses; doing the same Thing every Summer, and every Winter, until the Colts be three Years old, and vantage; and then take them up for altogether, and back them. Yearlings must be abroad together; so two Years old together, and three Years old together; for thus they will agree best; As we see that little young Boys, and greater old Boys, never agree, or play well together.

The Fillies you may better put together; Yearlings, and two Years old, and three. But I would wish you to take up the Fillies at two Years old, and vantage; then back them, and make them gentle, and then cover them at three Years old: For, being thus gentle, they will never spoil themselves, nor their Foles; and if they, or their Foles, be sick, or hurt, you may easily take them up for the *Farrier* to use his Skill to recover them.

But, why this Housing every Winter? You must know, there is nothing induces

H

Cold

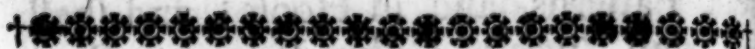
Cold worse than Horse kind. For Example; is there any thing in the World looks so like a Bear, and so ill-favouredly, as a Colt in Winter upon a Common, and stands as if he had neither Life, nor Spirit? and certainly, warmth, and dry Feeding, is the Quintessence, and greatest Secret in the World for Breeding. To prove it; the *Spanish* Horse, that is so fine, is bred in *Spain*, a hot Country, and hath dry Feeding; for there is not much Grass in many Places. *Barbary* is very hot, and little Grass. *Turkey* is very hot, and dry Grounds. *Naples* is very hot, mountainous, and dry; and in all those Countries, the Horses are purely shap'd, with Heat and dry Feeding; therefore you must help it, as well as you can, in cold Countries; which is done with Housing, and dry Feeding. To prove it, take the finest shap'd *Spanish* Horse you can, and let him cover two Mares of equal Beauty; and if they have two Horse Colts, let one run Abroad, until he be three Years and a half old, and let the other be Housed every Winter; and fed, as I have told you. That Colt that hath gone Abroad three Years and a half, shall have a great fleshy-Head, and thick and full Neckt; fleshy Shoulders; flabby and gowty Legs weak

Weak Pasterns, and ill Hoofs; and shall be a dull, weak, fleshy Jade, by Reason of the Humidity of our Country, both above and underneath: When the Colt that is Housed every Winter, that is kept warm, and lies dry, and is dry fed, shall have as fine a Forehand, as finewy-Legs, as good Hoofs, Spirit and Strength, and in all things will be as purely shap'd as a Spanish Horse can be.

So you see, that to have the finest Stallion, and the beautifullest Mares, is nothing, if you do not order them as I have told you. (See *Dutch Horses*, how gross they are, being bred in cold Countries.) This is a great Secret for breeding, believe me, that have tryed all manner of Ways; and according to my great Experience, there is nothing but this.

H 2

For



FOR THE
 BACKING
 OF A
 COLT.

IF you have used the Method of Housing your Colts every Winter; and, after the first Winter, used them in the Stable, as you do any other Horse; and that they will lead, and be as quiet as any Horse: You need not fear their plunging and leaping, nor a hundred Extravagancies more; neither need you tire him in a Bogg, or a deep plow'd Field, to take off his Spirit, to break his Heart, or at least his Wind, before you dare go upon him. For, being ordered as I have formerly told you, you may safely back him, and find him as quiet as a Lamb, and never drive him into faint Sweat, which will bring many Diseases upon him.

You need not then a *Cavezone* of Cord, which Mr. *Blundevil* calls a Head-Strainer, nor a Pad of Straw; but such a Saddle

is you ordinarily ride *Horses* of *Mannage* in, with Stirrups; and on his Nose, an ordinary *Cavezone*, as you ride other *Horses* with; but it must be well lined with double Leather, as the Rest are; and if you will, you may put a watering-Bitt in his Mouth, without Reins on, only the Headstall, and this but for a few Days; and then to put such a Bitt as I would always ride him withal, of which we shall speak hereafter, and so give him the Lessons, which you shall have perfectly set down in the second Book.

But if you light on an older *Colt*, and unruly, then put him to the single Pillar, and trot him, and gallop him on both Hands, until he be very quiet, and will peaceably suffer you to take his Back; which he will not fail to do within four or five Days at the most, if you use this Method: And I do not know, that the single Pillar, the old Way, is good for any Thing, but this. At first you must ride your *Colt* without Spurs. And thus much for backing of *Colts*.



O F T H E S P A N I S H M U L E S .

I Have seen the finest shap'd of them in the World; the finest shap'd Heads, and the best set on; the finest turned Necks, and the thinnest, and well risen; excellent Backs, good Bodies; their Legs, clean, and finewy; admirable Hoofs; their Croups a little slender: And in a Word, no *Horse* in the World finer shap'd, and only their Ears are a little long, which, methinks, is a Grace to them. They are of all Colours, as *Bayes*, *Dapple-Grays*, and so forth. Extreemly strong, as strong as two *Horses*; very large, some as large as any *Horse* whatsoever, and of great Prices, as three, and four hundred Pistoles a *Mule*. The King of *Spain* hath beautiful, and large ones in his Coach; they use them very much for the Saddle; for they amble most curiously, and easily; they seldom stumble, but when they do, they never fall further than their Knees.

They are very safe and sure to ride on; there be some very little ones, and fine ones, like *Galloways*; and those common

great Generals, and Commanders ride in the *Trenches*, and about fortify'd Castles, to view them: The grosser Sort they use for *Sumpters*, *Waggons*, and *Carriers* for many things. They also ride Post on them; and *Lon John de Borge*, who was Governor at *Antwerp*, told me, that they would amble as fast as any Horse could gallop.

They live long, and sound, thirty Years at least: There are Males and Females of them, and very hot they are in the Act of Generation, but never produce any thing, with any thing; either to get, or bring forth.

They say, one is never assured of them from biting or striking, though the Groom hath kept them twenty Years; but I perceive no such thing in them: And I have seen a *Mule* go in Capriols, excellently well. They say, they have ill Mouths; but that's because they spoil them with horrible Bitts: For they use both other Bitts, and other Saddles and Furniture to them, than to *Horses*; wherein they are very much mistaken. To those that are for the Saddle, I would use the very same Bitts and Saddles, as for *Horses*, and no otherwise. 'Tis true, that for *Sumpters*, there be proper things that they

they use for them only, and not for *Horses*, which is very comely. And in *Spain* they use in their Coaches, Ropes for the *Mules* (and the *Horses* also) to draw the Coaches withal. They are excellent to ride on in stony Ways, none like them; they are so sure of Foot.

The *Stallions* that get these *Mules*, are *Asses* upon very fine *Spanish* Mares.

Sir *Benjamin Wright*, being a Merchant at *Madrid*, writ to me once, that a Stallion *Ass* would cost, at the least, two hundred and fifty Pistoles; but others tell me of greater Prices that they are at: and great Reason, since *Mules* are of so great use to them in *Spain*.

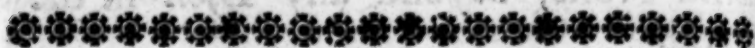
My Lord *Cottington* told me, that the *Asses* in *Spain*, are greater and larger Beasts, than ever he saw of *Horses* in all his Life, and almost of any other Beast; and are so furious, and full of Spirit, that there are Men, who live only by the ordering of them, and no other Men can do it, but those Men which make a Trade of it; for others would be kill'd by them. And these Men hood the *Asses* when they cover any *Mares*, that they may not see them; for otherwise they would pull the *Mares* in Pieces, and kill them. When they Bray, it is a most loud and horrid

horrid Noise, beyond any *Lyon* in the World.

Now you see, there is great Reason, why they should be of great Prices; but one that thinks they should be just such little dull *Asses* as are in *England*, of twenty or thirty Shillings a Piece, would laugh to hear this Tale told; because they think there is nothing more in the World than they have seen; As in such a Case, Sir *Walter Rawley* said well, *That there are stranger Things in the World, than between Stains and London.* The *Asses* in *France* are just like the *Asses* in *England*; little, lazy, dull, and woful things, and of as small Price; only in those parts of *France* that are next *Spain*, there the *Asses* are large, but nothing in Comparison of those in *Spain*.

The *She-Asses* in *Spain*, are very fair, and large; for else, how can you imagine such huge, large, and great puissant Beasts should be produc'd?

That



T H A T
T R Y I N G

Is the only Way to know

H O R S E S.

I Told you, that Marks, Colours, and Elements, are nothing at all to know a *Horse* by; for they are but *Philosophical Mountebanks* that talk of such *Toys*. Nay, Shape is Nothing to know the Goodness of a *Horse*; and therefore the best *Philosophy* is to try him: And you may be deceived then, if he be a young *Horse*; for Colts alter extreamly, both in Spirit and Strength. What Judgment can one give of a little Boy, what kind of Man he will prove? No more can one give a Judgment of a Colt, what kind of *Horse* he will prove. But still ride him, and try him; and that is the best *Philosophy* to know him by.

Some say, if a *Horse* have a great Head, a thick Neck, and fleshy Shoulders, that
he

he is hard on the Hand: You must know, that if he have any Imperfection in his Legs or Feet, but especially before, the *Horse* must be hard on the Hand; for he leans on the Hand, to ease the Grief of his Legs, as a Gowty-Man doth use his Staff. And let him be finely shap'd, or ill shap'd, if he have any Imperfection in his Legs, he must be hard on the Hand; and then the *Farrier* must cure him, and not the *Horse-Man*; for the Art of Riding will not make a lame *Horse* sound.

Our great Masters, and best Authors, say, that when a *Horse* is sound, if he have a great Head, thick Neck, and fleshy Shoulders; that then of Necessity, this *Horse* must be hard on the Hand; and give many rare Lessons, as they think, to make him light on the Hand: And they also say, that a *Horse* that hath a fine thin Forehand, must be light on the Hand, wherein they are infinitely deceived; for I have known more thick Heads, Necks and Shoulders, light on the Hand, than I have known fine shap'd, and slender Forehands. But it is neither the one, nor the other, that makes it, but merely the Strength of his Chine. For, if a *Horse*, that hath a great Head, thick Neck,

Neck, and fleshy Shoulders, hath a good Chine, he will be light on the Hand; and if he have a weak Chine, he will be hard on the Hand. And so a fine Forehand, if he have a weak Chine, he is hard on the Hand; and if he have a strong Chine, he is light on the Hand: So it is not having a gross, or a fine Forehand, that makes him hard or light, on the Hand; but all consists in the Strength of his Chine.

The Reason of that, is, because if he hath a strong Back, he can suffer without Grief or Pain to be put upon the *Hanches*: And no *Horse* is upon the *Hanches*, but he is light on the Hand; and if his Chine be weak, the putting him upon the *Hanches*, doth so pinch him, as he presses upon his Foreparts to save the Pain on his Back; and sometimes will run away rather than to suffer it; and will leap rather than to be pincht of his weak Back: And yet I must tell you, the strongest *Horses* are not fittest, or properest for the *Mannage*, nor for a Soldier's *Horse*; for you must gallop him an Hour before you can take him off his Fury; and such Counter-Times of Leaps, do incommode the Rider, to no Purpose: And when you would make him go, he shall not g

so well, as a *Horse* of half his Strength: And though he leaps in such a Manner, that will disorder an armed Man; yet the best *Horseman* in the World shall not make him a leaping *Horse*: Therefore the best for the *Mannage*, and the War, is a *Horse* that hath so much Strength as to endure a Stop, and no more, to make him easie for an armed Man. And certainly a weak *Horse* with Spirit, docil, and of a good Disposition, is much better, and will go beyond a huge *Flander's Horse*, of a *Dutch Brewer*, that hath no Spirit: And I must tell you, that the greatest and largest *Horses* are not commonly the strongest, but for the most part the contrary; for that which makes them draw, is their Weight, and not their Strength, nor their Spirit; for they have none. I dare say, I can take a little *English Cart Horse* that shall draw twice as much as their great *Flanders Horses*; commonly those they use in *Flanders* are Geldings.

I

How



How to know the

A G E

O F A

H O R S E

MR. *Blundevil* says, some seek to know a *Horse's* Age in this Sort: They pull his Skin with their Hand from his Flesh, holding it so a pretty while together, and then let it go again, marking whether the Skin returneth immediately to his Place, or not, without leaving any Sign or Wrinkle where it was toucht: And then they judge the *Horse* to be young. But if the Skin will not fall down quickly again of its own Accord, they take him to be old, and to lack that natural Heat, and warm Blood, which should nourish his outward parts. These are the very Words of Mr. *Blundevil*.

Let us see the Probability of it, and the Certainty of the Rule, in a *Horse* whose Mark is out of his Mouth; for ma-
ny

ny *Horses* that are many Years older, if they be healthful, and sound, and in good Case, wanton, and full of Blood, their Skin will return to the same Place again presently, when a younger *Horse* by many Years, that is sickly, lean, and faint, his Skin will not return so soon; and then your old Observation deceives you, and is a great Folly. And when he will know a *Horse's* Age by his Tail, he begins at the wrong End; which is most ridiculous.

Mr. *Blundevil* says also, that when a *Horse* waxeth old, his Temples will wax hollow, and the Hair of his Brows hoar and white, &c. This is, for the most part somewhat probable. But yet I have known a young Fellow of Seventeen all Gray; why may it not be so in *Horses*? Nay, I have known some so. But though I grant, that gray Hairs shew Age, for the most part; yet I believe, you do not know how old a *Horse* is for all that Observation, but only in general, that he is old.

So that there is no sure Way to know his Age but by his Teeth; and that is a certain Rule, but lasts no longer than seven Years old. Captain *Mazine* says, that a *Horse's* Years may be known until he is Fourteen, by his upper Teeth; but, be-
I 2 cause

cause it doth not hold in all *Horses*, I forbear to write it. There is some Difference between *Horses* and *Mares* to know their Age.

For any Man that would have a *Horse* of use, in his ordinary Occasions; as for Journies, Hawking, or Hunting; I would never buy a *Horse* until the Mark be out of his Mouth; and if he be Sound of Wind, Limb, and Sight, he will last you eight or nine Years with good keeping, and never fail you; when a young *Horse* will have many Diseases, as Children have, and you must leave him with your Host at *Harborow*, or *Northampton*, or some Inn, and hire another *Horse* for your Occasion, and have your Host's Bill, and the Farrier's, which will come to more than your *Horse* is worth; and there's your young *Horse*; but your old *Horse* shall never fail you. I am always ready to buy for such Purposes, an old Nagg of some *Hunts-Man* or *Falconer*, that is sound, and that's the useful Nagg; for he gallops on all Grounds, leaps over Ditches, and Hedges; and this will not fail you in your Journey, nor any where; and is the only Nagg of use, for Pleasure, or Journey, but not for a Soldier's *Horse*, nor the *Mannage*: For every *Horse* must be

be appropriated in his kind, and put to what he is fittest.



WHAT

EQUIPAGE

Is proper for the

HORSE,

And most commodious for the *Horse-Man*
afore the *Horse* is mounted.

FOR the Saddle, Bitt, Cavezone, Stirrups, and Spurs, in my first Book of Horfemanship you shall see the Figures of all these, most lively represented.

For the Girths, I must advise you to have one Girth as broad as two, only at each End separated, as if they were two, though it is but one Girth; and an *Italian Surcingle* over them; which is so excellent a Thing, that if the Girths, or Straps should break, yet the *Surcingle* will not fail to hold.

You must fit your Horse with a Bitt
proper

proper for him; that is, a Cannon, or a Scatch, *A la Pignatel*, and Branches *A la Conestable*; and the same Bitt I will always ride my Horse with I give him at first; for they are ridiculous with their Pistol Cannons, and not to fit a Horse for two Years, and then to bitt him up. But I will always bitt and fit my Horse at the first, with what he should always wear, or such another when that's broke, or is worn in Pieces.

Your Horse should be girt as hard as you can; for the *Italian* says, he that girds well, rides well. But a *Groom* may gird well, and yet not ride well. But they mean, no Man can ride well, that doth not gird well: For, how can he ride well when the Saddle turns round? Horses of *Mannage* force the Girths much with violent *Ayres*, which an ambling Horse doth not. But I must tell you, that you, should never gird your Horse up hard and straight, but just before you ride him; for, being hard girt in the Stable long before you ride him, I have known them grow very sick. Why do they not so when they are ridd, say you? I'll tell you why; Because the Violence of the Exercise makes them put out their Bodies, and so stretches the Girths, and makes them easier.

But

But I will tell you a great Truth in Horses that are used to be girt hard: When the Groom comes to gird them up, the Horses will so stretch their Bodies and Bellies out, with holding their Breath, that the Grooms have much ado to gird them: And this is craftily done of them, that they may have ease after they are girded, and then they let their Bodies fall again. And yet, says the learned, *like to the Horse that hath no understanding.*

Another Thing I am to advertise you of; and that is, to make the Nose-Band as straight as possible you can; because it hinders him, as they say, to make Sheers with his Mouth, or to gape to disorder the Working of the Bitt, or to bite at the Rod when you help him, or to bite at your Feet. But the Nose Band, being very straight, makes the Bitt lie in his due Place, and works orderly, as it ought, both upon the Barrs, and the Curb, and firms and settles his Head: And I assure you, there is nothing better than this, for many Things; and therefore I would have also the Cavezone as straight as you could, for many Reasons; and remember that your Cavezone be never sharp, but always lined with double Leather at the least, for fear of hurting him: Though the old
Saying

Saying is, *a bloody Nose makes a good Mouth*; I would neither hurt his Mouth, nor his Nose, nor any Thing else about him, if I could help it; and then I am sure he will have a better Mouth, when his Nose is not hurt.

Sakers, Dockes, or Trousse Quers, (which is all one) is a great Grace for a leaping Horse; for it makes him appear plumper, and more together, *Racourfi*, and makes him appear to go higher too; therefore I would use *Sakers* for all kinds of leaping Horses, whether for *Croupadoes*, *Balotadoes*, or *Caprioles*; but then the Horses Tails must be tied short up, upon the *Saker*.

For Horses that go the *Mannage de Soldat, Terra a Terra*, in *Corvets*, or *Demy-Ayres*, there is nothing handsomer, than to see a Horse with a good Tail down, without any Thing; no *Quin/sel*, or any Thing, but naturally; and to see him lay his Tail on the Ground, is graceful, and shews that he goes upon the Hanches; which is the Perfection of the *Mannage*.

To beautify their Manes before great Princes, or Persons of Quality, there is nothing more graceful, than to tye their Manes with several coloured Ribbons, or

all of one Colour, in many several Ways; either pleating their Manes, or letting them be loose.

I never saw any Horse go so well with rich Saddles, as with plain Leather Saddles and black Bridles: The Leather Saddles should be plain white *Spanish* Leather, sticht with Silk; with Silver Nails, and a good black Leather Slap Cover over it, and the Bridle soft black Leather, and small; by no Means too great; Two Girths in one, to part at both Ends, like two Girths; and a good *Italian* Surcingle, which is worth both the Girths for sure holding.

You must be very careful, to see that nothing that is about the Horse should hurt him; as his Saddle, Bitt, Cavezone, or any Thing else: For, I assure you, as long as any Thing hurts him, he will never go well.

No Horse goes well in a Wind, it doth so whisk about him, and in his Ears, and makes such a Noise, as it diverts him from the *Mannage*; and so doth any new help, or any new thing that they are not accustomed to: Horses are very sensible, and tickle; and no Strangers must come near them.

There is one Thing that is the most uncomely,

uncomely, and the disgracefullest Thing a *Horse* can do; and that is, to whisk his Tail in all the Actions that he makes. The common Remedy they use, is, to tie his Tail with a Quinsel; which doth remedy that Vice, as long as it holds; But the best Thing in the World, is, to cut cross the great Nerve that is under his Tail, and then he shall never whisk or shake it again; and it will do him no Hurt in the World, more than when it is cut. There is no Remedy like unto this.



A very true *Paradox*.

I Will never put my *Horses* of *Mannage* to Soil, after they are five Years old. I had a *Barb* that had a Cold, and I was perswaded to put him to Soil; but when I took him from it, he was broken Winded. Though I never put them, but six or seven Days to Soil, yet I ever found them the worst for it, both for Colds, and their Flesh being flabby. Doth not every Body say, when you take a Horse from Grass, that you take him up with a Grass Cold? And it is very true. Then these *Horses* of *Mannage*, which are extreemly heated,

heated, and often must, of Necessity, melt their Grease. If you give them Grass to cool them, and purge them (as they say) to bring it away, it being hardened like Tallow, Grass is too gentle to do it effectually: But I confess it dissolves some small Part of it, which it doth not bring away; and that which is dissolved, runs into their Veins, and Arteries, and makes them remain sick Horses, so that they will never thrive. Therefore, at the Time of Soil, let them Blood once or twice, and give them Pills of *Alloes Sicc-trina* two Ounces, lapped up in fresh Butter; and after that, give them cooling Julips twice or thrice a Week for a Fortnight, or three Weeks together; and let them rest, or but walk gently out, and no Grass at all: During the great Heats ride moderately, by no Means violently.

Horses of great Exercise must have dry Feeding; for moist Feeding spoils them, and fills them full of Diseases and Corruption; therefore never give them Grass, and but very little Hay. The Method thus; Before their Water, give them but a Handful of Hay, only to make them drink; and after their Water, another Handful of Hay, to be a *Barricado* between

tween their Water, and their Oats, that they should not shoot their Oats too soon; and then give them their Oats; and all the rest of the Day, and Night, nothing but Wheat Straw. As the *Italian* says, a Horse that is fed with Hay, is a Horse for a Cart, he is so foggy and purse; but they say, *cavallo de palla, cavallo de Batala*; and thus his Flesh will be as hard as a Board, in great Lust, Wind, and Strength, and as nervous as possible can be, and in great Health.

Excellent clean Oats is the best Feeding in the World; sometimes you may give a few Pease, or hull'd Beans, which is very good; but never any Bread, for that makes them purse, as we know very well by Running-Horses. I never give above two Bushels of Oats a Week to every Horse, and it is enough; for they look extraordinary well with it.

A Horse must ever be empty before you ride him, and stand some three or four Hours, both Morning, and Afternoon, upon the Watering Bitt, to turn him from the Manger, to get him a better Appetite; which is excellent good.

Wheat it is strengthning, but it makes a Horse fat at the Heart, and out of Wind. Barley they give in *Italy* and *Spain*, but

it is not our common Barley; but that which we call Big: which is not an ill feeding, but not comparable to good Oats: But in *Italy* and *Spain*, they give Barley, because they have no Oats: Pease-Straw will make a Horse piss red like Blood. If you follow this Method, you will ever have your Horse well, and sound.

I must tell you, it is not much Meat, but the ordering of the Diet, that makes Horses in Health: Nay, to some great and Hay Feeders (as they call it) you must give but a little Wheat Straw; for else they will be as pursey and fat, as a stall fed Oxen: Nay, some again will eat their Litter, which is very foul Feeding. And then the Joekeys use to put their Horses upon the Muzzle, which I like not by any Means; for many Horses grow very sick upon it, because it doth almost smother them; therefore in that Case, I put on a Cavezone, and tie it so streight, that he cannot eat, and then he hath his Nostrils clear for Breath, and is never sick.

Be sure, that you never dress your Horse, until he be cold; for until then, he will not dress; though I have seen many foolish butchers offer at it, to dispatch their Work:

Nor turn them to the Manger to their Meat, after their Exercise, until they be cold ; for, though you give them no Water, or but to wash their Mouths, yet Eating, whilst they are hot, makes ill Digestion.

There is nothing conduces more to the health of *Horses*, than to keep them three or four Hours before they be rid, on the watering Bitt ; and after they are rid, so long again on the watering Bitt, until they be cool ; and in the Afternoon turn'd again on the watering Bitt three or four Hours.

For Worms, it is good to give them Brimstone in their Oats, and to put Bay Salt by them, which they will lick apace ; and Fenugreek, and sometimes a Spoonfull of sweet Sallet Oyl mingled with their Oats. But the most soveraign Thing that ever I knew, is Honey mingled with their Oats.

Horses of great Exercise, that have often great Heats, as *Horses* of *Mannage* have must be let Blood often, and have dry Feeding ; for moist Feeding, and Exercise breeds great Corruption ; Cooling-Julips and Cooling-Glisters, (which I will set down hereafter) are very needful to preserve their *Health*.



To make a Horse have a fine Coat.

There are but these four Things, *viz.* Feeding well, Cloathing warmly, many Sweats, and Dressing well.

For Dressing, there are these Things; the Curry-Comb, which only fetches out Dust; the Dusting Cloath, that takes away the loose Dust; the Brush, that takes the Dust from the Bottom of the *Hair*; the hard Wisp, a little moistned, that takes out more Dust yet from him; and the Felt a little moistned, that takes out more Dust from him afterwards; but the wet *Hand* which should be last, takes not only more Dust, but a great deal of loose *Hair*, which is much better than any of the former: After this, a Linnen Cloath to wipe them over, and then a woollen Cloath, and so cloath him up.

But, the best of all is the Knife *Heat*, which is the Scraper; for, when he is hot, scraping of him gets all the Sweat, and Moisture out of him, so that he is dry presently after, and all that Wet would turn to Dust, so there is so much Labour saved: Besides it gets abundance of *Hair*

from him, which the rest doth not; so that it is the most excellent Thing I know, both to cool a Horse, and to make him have a good Coat.

You must wash his Hoofs first clean, and then dry them; and when they are dry, then anoint them; and when his Feet are pick'd, then stop them with Cow Dung.

In Summer he must be lightly cloathed in the Heats, and his Legs and Feet all wash'd, and his Cods, and his Sheath, made clean; for there will be a great deal of Dirt in those Places else; and his Yard made clean, and either washed with Water or white Wine; his Temples, Eyes, Nostrils, and Mouth, bathed with cold Water in a Sponge, which will much refresh him: Nay, to be washed all over, and scrap'd, is excellent, both for his Coat and Health; and sometimes to be wash'd with Soap: His Mane to be wash'd and kept clean; and sometimes to be wash'd with Soap will make it grow; and if the Hair should fall, then wash it in Lee, but not too strong, for that would fetch it off: dress his Mane clean every Day, and pleat it up again, which will make it grow very much: You must wash his Tail very clean, up to the very Dock, Dock and all

and

and often wet his Dock with a Sponge, not only to make his Hair lie close, but to make it grow ; and also it doth refresh him very much, and keeps him cold handsomely.

But if your Horse hath a white Tail, wash it never so clean, yet he will dye it in his Dung and Urine, that it will be yellow, and therefore you must wash it very clean with Water and Soap ; and when it is dry, put it in a Bag, and tie it up, and that will keep it clean, and white.

Clip his Ears ; and no more of his Mane, than for the Head-stall to lie there ; and cut his Tail a little above his Fetlock, and cut it every Month to make it grow. You may dress him in as many various Sorts with Ribbons, as there are Colours, which beautifies him much.

He must be well littered with fresh Rye Straw every Night, and to have Patterns on his Fore-Fet keeps him from much Hurt ; but one Pattern on his hinder Foot, tyed to the Pillar behind him, with a Leather Rein at such a length as he may lie down, doth avoid more Mischief than you can imagine : The woollen Cloath must always be laid upon his Buttock under his Housing Cloath ; you must always have your Horses to have Hoods,

and both they, and their Housing-Cloaths lined with *Cotton*, or *Baies*, to keep them warm.

Have good Collars, Surcingles, and Padds, and a little Rein to tie them up to the Wall or Rack; and good watering Bitts, which, as I told you afore, are very useful. And be careful, after a great heat, that you give him no Water till Night, except only to wash his Mouth; for it is very dangerous, and may spoil him utterly; for a *Horse* will be cool without, when he is not within: and the worst is but to forbear his Meat a little, or to have a small Body, which is much better than to have no *Horse*.



Of Shoeing.

TH E old Saying, is, *before behind, behind before*. That is, before, the Veins lie behind: For, you see of his fore Feet, there is a great Space on both Sides, where there is no Nails at the Heel. And behind, before; for you see in his hinder Feet, there is a great Space between the Nails at the Toe; because the Veins lie before, at the Toe; and the Veins lie behind

behind at the Heel; and this is done for fear of pricking him. So that the Saying, *before behind, behind before*, is very true.

You must fit the Shoe to the Foot, and not the Foot to the Shoe, as they do in *Flanders*, and *Brabant*; and open his Heels as much as you can, straight, and not side Ways; for that will cut away all his Heels in two or three Shoeings; and the Strength of the Heels, is the Strength of the Foot. You must cut the Thrush handsomely too, and pare his Foot as hollow as you can, that the Shoe may not press at all upon his Foot: The Shoe must come near to the Heel, and sit a little from it, and a little wider than the Hoof on both Sides, to enlarge the Heel; and that the Shoe may bear his Weight, more than his Foot.

The Web must be indifferent broad; not too thin, lest it should beat into his Foot, nor so thick, either to tire him, or with the Weight to pull out the Nails.

When the Shoe is set on, there will be much Hoof to be cut off at the Toe; for, it must be very thick at the Toe, if you do not pare him but as I have told you; and when you have cut it off, then smooth it with a *File*, or *Rape*, and thus your Horse will stand so firm, as if he had a little

the *Polonia Heel*; and his Foot so strong, as not only to go boldly upon Stones, but to break them, and never to hurt his Feet, or feel them: For, you will easily imagine, a Man can go much better upon Stones with three soal'd Shoes, than with Pumps. Paring a *Horse's* Foot so thin as they use, is Pumps, and makes him go upon his *Heels*, as Pumps doth a Man; and my Way, as I have told you, is, three Soal'd Shoes, and a little *Polonia Heel*.

The Nails should be cast in a Mould, with round and flat Heads, for fear of crossing one Leg of another to hurt him. This for the fore Feet.

The hinder Feet are to be shod just in the same Manner as the fore Feet was, both for opening the *Heels*, cutting the Thrush and cutting off at the Toe, to leave it thick; only the hinder Shoes must be made answerable to the Form of his hinder Feet: The Web somewhat broad, but the Nails of his hinder Feet should be ordinary Nails, and the Heads a little bigger and sharper, for stopping, to take hold of the Earth, lest he might, with sliding, incord himself; the Nails ought to be so, because a *Horse* of *Mannage* goes on the Hanches, which is most of his

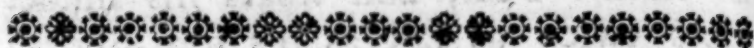
his hinder Feet, and wears his hinder Shoes twice as fast as his fore Shoes: And this is the right Way of shooing a *Horse of Mannage*.

A travelling *Horse* must be shod after the same Manner, but a little straighter; for otherwise, in ill Ways, he will pull off his Shoes; the Web must be a little narrower.

A hunting *Horse* must also be shod after the same Way, but much narrower than the travelling *Horse*, even with his Foot, and the Web much narrower, or else he will indanger to lame himself, upon ill Grounds, and to indanger you with falling; besides pulling off his Shoes.

A running *Horse's* Shoes are so narrow at the Web, and so thin, as they are called Plates rather than Shoes; it is not only for lightness, but that the fresh Nails being newly shod, may take better hold of the Earth to prevent slipping: For, could the Nails be put in without Shoes, as even and regularly, it would do as well; but that cannot be, and therefore you must have Plates for that end, which is the only end of Plates.

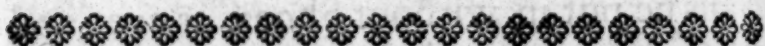
What



*What is to be done, when the Hair from the
Mane and Tail falls away.*

SEARCH both *Mane* and *Tail* well with your Finger, and anoint the Place with this *Unguent*. Take quick Silver, and tryed Hog's Grease; the quick Silver being first mortified with fasting Spittle: Incorporate them very well together, till the Hog's Grease be of a perfect Ash Colour, and anoint the Sorrance there with, every Day; holding a hot Bar of Iron near, to cause the Ointment to sink in, and in three or four Days thus carefully dressing him, he will be well.

This is a very good Receipt, and I have often used it: But I would advise you first to let him Blood, a good Quantity, both in the Neck and Tail.



To cause the Hair to grow again.

TAKE the Dung of a Goat, newly made; ordinary Honey, Allom, and the Blood of a Hog; the Allom being first made into a fine Powder. Boil all these

these together, and rub, and anoint the Places therewith every Day, and it will cause the Hair to come again apace. This is special good.

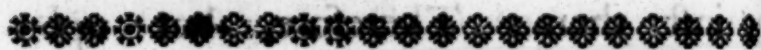
I use to preserve my *Horses* Manes, making them very clean from all Filth and Dust with the Brush; then wash them with a little Soap: And having wash'd out the Soap, pleat them up in great Pleats, and undo them every Day, pleat them again; and this will make them grow wonderfully: For, their Manes being loose, they are apt to break, especially when they are rid, by Reason of the Bridle, Cavezone Reins, and Hand, that rubs against them: Therefore, but upon high Days, let their Manes be always pleated.

Their Tails should be always kept clean, and wash'd with Soap sometimes, but wash'd clean every Day; and when they are dry, comb'd out carefully, for fear of breaking the Hair: Let his Dock be wetted with a Sponge often in a Day, which will both make it grow, and make the Hair to lie even; and his Tail cut every Month, which will both make it grow, and grow thick. To observe the Time of the Moon, is but an old Foppery; but to let him Blood in the Tail, is very good,

Now

Now you must understand, that what you take many Times for Dust in his Mane, are little Worms, which eat the Roots of the Hair away; this is easily known from Dust; because, if the Hair falls, you may be very sure they are Worms.

The Cure is thus: Make a pretty strong Lie, and wash his Mane with it once a Day, and he will be cured; but you must take heed, that the Lee be not too strong; for, if it be, that alone will burn all the Hair of his Mane off: So the Cure will be worse than the Disease.



Rare Receipts, Julips, Glisters, and Potions, for cooling a Horse over-heated by violent Exercise: Promised before.

FOR a Horse that hath a Cold, take half a Pound of Honey, half a Pound of Treacle, mix these together: Then take an Ounce of Cumminseed, beaten into Powder; an Ounce of Liquorish Powder, an Ounce of Bay Berries beaten into Powder, and an Ounce of Anniseeds in Powder: Then mix all these Powders together, and put so much of them as shall make

shall make it thick as a hasty Pudding. After the *Horse* is ridden, give it him with a Stick to lick off; and if he have a Cold, give him of it, both before, and after he is Ridden; for, no better Medicine there is not.



When a Horse is over-ridden, to comfort him.

TAKE a Pint of sweet Milk, and put three Yolks of Eggs beaten into it; then make it luke-warm, and then put in three Penny Worth of *Saffron*, and one Penny Worth of *Sallet-Oyl*, which is two or three Spoonfuls, and give it the *Horse*, in a *Horn*: You may give him near a Quart of Milk. This is an excellent Drink.

Honey is the most excellent thing in the World, both for the Lungs, a Cold, and to open all Obstructions, putting one good Spoonful into his *Oats*, and so to continue this Medicine for a pretty time. I have known it recover a very pursey *Horse*.

Horses of great Exercise, or that are overheated, and have great Fire in their Bodies, must be let Blood often; nay twice or thrice within a few Days, one after another,

and still let Blood, until you see good Blood comes: To let such a *Horse* Blood in the Mouth, and then rub his Mouth with Salt, and let him eat his Blood, is an excellent thing: But you must purge him well, that his *Grease* may come away; for *Horses* of great Exercise would else be always foundered in the Body, and then they will never thrive until that melted Grease be brought away.

The best purge is two Ounces of *Aloes Sicatrina*, lapt up in Butter, and made into two Pills, and so give it your *Horse* after he hath rested a While; then give him this following and refreshing Drink, which is the best *Julip* in the World:

Take *Mel Rosatum*, or Honey of *Roses*. *Conserve* of *Damask-Roses*. *Conserve* of *Burrage*. *Sirrup* of *Violets*. Of each four Ounces.

Burrage Water. *Endive Water*. *Succory Water*. *Bugloss Water*. *Plantain Water*. Of each half a *Dutch Pint*, which is near as much as an *English Quart*.

Then you are to use both these *Conserve* and *Waters*, thus:

Put all the *Conserve* into a *Mortar*, and beat them, or pound them together, and then mix them by little and little, with the *Waters*, till they be well mixt together.

then give them all together in a Horn, to the *Horse*, without Straining: Give it cold by any Means. Sirrup of *Lemmons* added to it, is very good: Give it twice or thrice a Week for a Fortnight at least, and let the *Horse* rest afterwards.

Feed your *Horse* all the time of this great Heat within, with *Wheat-Bran* amongst his *Cats*, and wash them in a little Beer, if he likes it. This *Bran* is the best thing in the World to get out his Belly, and to moisten him, because it dries up all superfluous Humours which heat him: In his Water, when you water him, put also *Wheat-Bran* into it, and let him eat of that *Bran* also. This is most excellent; and will not only cool him, and moisten him, but also loosen his Skin, if he be apt to be hide bound, which all Heat doth.

Lettuces are very good to cool him; *Succory* Roots, or *Endive* Roots, are all one. To boil *Succory* Roots in his Water is very good; and *Purflane*, to give it him now and then to eat, is also very good; to sprinkle his Hay with Water, and to give him *Radishes* to make him piss, will cool him. And let him have no violent Exercise, until he be recovered, but gentle Walking.

This is the most excellent thing in the World; beyond all the Printed Books of Receipts.



To Cool and Refresh a Horse.

Give him *Carrots* with his *Oats*, or upon his *Watering-Bitt*; *Apples* is excellent, and so *Muskmellons*, or the *Skins* of them; to wash his *Oats* in small Beer, is also very excellent.



A Receipt of the Cooling-Julip, or Diet-Drink, that Doctor Davison doth give in Fevers.

Take *Barley Water* two Pints: Of *Sirrup of Violets* two Ounces: Of *Sirrup of Lemmons* one Ounce; mix them together, and use this Water to quench their Thirst.

And let him have no more to drink till he be recovered, but let him walk.



*A Julip for Fevers to bind the Body, if it
be Loose.*

TAKE one Ounce of *Ivory*, and one Ounce of *Harts-Horn*; rasp them, and put them in three *Paris* Pints of Water, and let them boil together, until the half be consumed; then strain it through a Cloath: And put to this Liquor, four Ounces of the best Juice of *Barberries*, and one Ounce and a half of *Sirrup* of *Pomegranates*. This is to be used to Cool.

These are excellent for Fevers in *Horses* as well as Men; only you must give a third, or a fourth Part more to *Horses*, since they have stronger Bodies; else the Disease is all one, and the Remedy is all one: And this Method will cure both Man and *Horse*; and all other Ways are pernicious to them both, which is either *Physick* that purges, or hot *Cordials*; only when he is cured, then a Purge, as I said before, to take away the Dreggs that remain, and no more.



A cooling Potion which is most excellent.

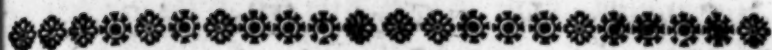
TAKE a Quart of *Whey*, and four or five Ounces of Sirrup of *Violets*, and four or five Ounces of *Cassia*, and a little *Manna*; and this will both cool and purge gently, and is a most excellent Remedy for *Horses* of great Exercise.

To take the very same at the other End, will do much good to cool the Bowels; and is a very rare, and soveraign cooling Glister.

All these cooling things are most excellent for *Horses* of great Exercise, which are overheated, and surfeited with Riding, so you give them first the Purge of *Aloes*, to bring away their Grease.

Here Ends the First Part.

Th



T H E

SECOND PART.

*Of Riding and Dressing Horses upon the
GROUND.*

T Here is no Man can make or dress a *Horse* perfectly, that doth not exactly understand all the natural Paces and Actions of a *Horse's* Legs, in every one of them, and all the Actions of his Legs, made by Art.

It is a general Rule, that Art must never be against Nature; but must follow Nature, and set her in Order.



Of the natural Paces.

F Irst of a *Horse* upon his Walk. The Action of his Legs in that Motion, is, two Legs in the Ayre, and two Legs upon the Ground, at the same time moved cross, fore Leg and hinder Leg cross, which is the true Motion of a slow Trot. Secondly,

Secondly. In a *Trot*. The Action of his Legs, is, two Legs in the Ayre, and two Legs upon the Ground, at the same time moved cross; fore and hinder Leg cross; which is the Motion of his Leg a swifter Walk: For, in a *Walk* and a *Trot*, the Motion of the *Horse's* Legs are all one, which his Legs makes cross, two in the *Ayre* cross, and two upon the Ground cross, at the same time; fore Leg and hinder Leg cross: and every remove changes his Legs cross; as those that were in the *Ayre* cross, are now set down; and those that were upon the Ground cross, are now pull'd up in the *Ayre* cross. And this is the just Motion of a *Horse's* Legs in a *Trot*.

Thirdly. For an *Amble* he removes both his Legs of a Side: As for Example; take the far Side, he removes his fore Leg, and his hinder Leg, of the same Side at one time, whilst the other two Legs of the near Side stand still; and when those Legs are upon the Ground which he first removed, at the same time they are upon the Ground the other Side; which is, the near Side removes fore Leg, and hinder Leg on that Side, and the other Legs of the far Side stand still.

Thus an *Amble* removes both his Legs of a Side, and every remove changes Sides;

two of a Side in the Ayre, and two upon the Ground at the same time. And this is a perfect Amble.

Fourthly. A *Gallop* is another Motion: For, in a *Gallop* he may lead with which fore Leg you please; but then the hinder Leg of the same Side must follow it, I mean when he gallops straight forwards; and then this is a perfect *Gallop*.

But to understand what is meant by his fore Leg leading, and his hinder Leg on the same Side following; that fore Leg is thus. As for Example; if the far fore Leg lead, by that fore Leg leading, is meant, that fore Leg must be before the other fore Leg always, and the hinder Leg to follow it on the same Side; which hinder Leg must always be before the other hinder Leg; and this a true Gallop.

But now to shew you that the Motion of a Gallop is thus: The *Horse* lifts both his fore Legs up at a time, in that Action that I told you, which is one Leg before the other; and as his fore Legs are falling, I say before they touch the Ground, his hinder Legs in that Posture I formerly told you, follow his fore Legs, being once all in the Ayre at one time; for as his fore Legs are falling, his hinder Legs move at the same time, and then he is all in the Ayre: For,
how

how is it possible else, that as a *Horse* is running, he should spring forward twice his length, were not the Motion of a Gallop a Leap forward?

And this Description is most true both in the Motion and Posture of a *Horse's* Legs, whan he gallops: In a soft and slow Gallop it is hardly perceived, though it be true; but in running, where the Motion is more violent, it is easily perceived: For there it is plain; you shall see all his four Feet in the Ayre at one time, (Running being but a swift Gallop) for the Motion and Posture of his Legs are all one. But you must remember that galloping upon Circles, the *Horse* always ought to lead with his two Legs within the turn; fore Leg, and hinder Leg within the turn, And this is a true Gallop.

Fifthly. When a *Horse* runs, the Motion he makes, and the Action of his Legs, are all one with a Gallop; only a swifter Motion, which you may call a swift Gallop; and a Gallop a slow Running: And this is the truth of the Motion of running.

Now I must tell you of that which every Body speaks of, and no Body tells what it is: For, they say, a *Horse* may gallop with the wrong Leg before, which is impossible: For, if the hinder Leg of

the same Side follows, it is a right Gallop; so that rather it is the wrong Leg behind. But that which they call the wrong Leg before, is thus a true Gallop, if that Leg which leads before, is follow'd by the hinder Leg of the same Side; and as the *Horse* falls with his two fore Legs, his hinder Legs follow them, before his fore Legs touch the Ground; so that at that very time all the *Horse's* four Legs are in the Ayre, and it is a leap forward. That which they call the wrong Leg before, is this, when the *Horse* is upon the Motion, in the Swiftnes of a Gallop, he changes his Legs cross; which is the Action of a Trot, two Legs in the *Ayre* and two upon the Ground; and that is so contrary to a Gallop, and is such a cross Motion, as makes the *Horse* ready to fall; and this is one Way of that which they call, the wrong Leg before.

Another Way is this, that when the *Horse* is upon the Action of a Gallop; as I told you before, in the Swiftnes of a Gallop, where he should keep always two Legs of a Side forward, he changes Sides every time, fore leg and hinder leg of a Side; and changing Sides every time, that is the Action of an Amble, which is two legs of a Side in the *Ayre*, and two legs of

of the other Side upon the Ground at the same Time, and changing Sides every time. This Action of an Amble, upon the Swiftnes of a Gallop, differs so much from the Action of a Gallop, as it makes the *Horse* ready to fall: And these two, the Action of a Trot, and the Action of an Amble, upon the Swiftnes of a Gallop, is that which their Ignorance calls, the wrong leg before.

It is true, that though a Horse do gallop right, which is his hinder leg to follow his fore leg on the same Side; yet if he be not accustomed to that Side, he will gallop neither so nimbly, nor so fast, as with that Side he is accustomed to lead withal; For, it is just as a left handed, or a right handed Man: custom having a very great Power over Man and Beast: Else, when the Horse gallops forward, never so little a Gallop, his hinder legs go beyond the Print of his fore legs, and that leg that he leads withal. For Example; if the inward fore leg lead, the inward hinder leg follows; so those are prest, and his outward legs at liberty: So that in the Action he makes, his outward fore leg is set to the Ground first, and is at Liberty: that's one time: And then his inward fore

fore leg, which is prest, and leads, makes a second time, that's two: And then his outward hinder leg, which is at Liberty, is set down; that's three times: And then his inward hinder leg, which is prest, and leads, is set down; and that makes a fourth time. So that a Gallop forward, is 1, 2, 3 and 4. which is the just Action and time of a Gallop forward, and is a Leap forward. Now upon Circles, his Croup out upon a Gallop, he must always lead with his inward legs to the Turn, and strikes over but sometimes; not so much, but that the Action of the Gallop is all one; which is 1, 2, 3, and 4. and a leap forward.



Of a Trot.

A Trot is the Foundation of a Gallop: The Reason is, a Trot being cross, and a Gallop both legs of a Side; when you trot him fast beyond the Power of a Trot, it forces him, when his inward fore leg is up, to set down his outward hinder leg so suddenly, as to make his inward hinder leg to follow his inward fore leg,
M which

which is a true gallop. And thus a trot is the Foundation of a gallop.

A gallop is the Foundation of *Terra a Terra*, for the Action, of the *Horse's* legs are all one; leading with the fore leg within the turn; and following that leg with his hinder leg within the turn; only you stay him a little more on the Hand in *Terra a Terra*, that he may go in time.

An Amble, being a shuffling Action, I would have banish'd the Mannage; for the Horse removes both his legs of a Side, and changes Sides every remove; which is so contrary to the Mannage, as can be: But if you make him to gallop; whereas upon a trot, you trot him fast to take his gallop, you must upon the amble stay him upon the Hand to take his gallop.



A true Description of all the natural and artificial Motions a Horse can make.

First, for *Terra a Terra*, the Horse always leads with the legs within the turn, like a gallop; his two fore legs up, and as they are falling, his two hinder legs follow; and at that time, all his four legs

are

are in the Ayre, so that it is a leap forward; the same upon *Demy-Vaults*; for it is all but the Action of *terra a terra*. Now when the Horse's Croup is in, whether upon a little gallop, or *terra a terra*, here his hinder legs are always short of his fore legs, because his Croup is in; but if it be *Le petit Gallop*, his Action is still 1, 2, 3, and 4. because it is a gallop. But in *terra a terra*, the Action is but two, a 1 & 2 *pa: ta:* like a *Corvet*, but only prest forward; a *Corvet* is a leap upward, and higher; and *terra a terra* a leap forward, and lower; and his inward legs that lead more before his outward legs, being another Action than a *Corvet*.

Secondly, *Corvets*, a *Demy-Ayre*, a *Groupado*, a *Balatado*, or a *Capriol*, are all but a leap upward; for all his four legs are in the Ayre, as his fore parts are falling. And there are no more Artificial Motions than these two; *terra a terra*, and these Ayres last mentioned.



*The Ordering of the Cavezone my Way,
and the Operation and Use of it.*

TAke one of the Reins, which must be long, and a little Ring at one End, and put the other End into that Ring, and so put it about the Pommel, and then put the rest down by the fore Bolster of the Saddle under your Thigh; and the rest of the Rein put through the Ring on the same Side of the Cavezone, and so bring it back again, either to be in your Hand, or tie it to the Pommel straight; and do the same with the other Rein in all things, as I told you with this.

The Cavezone is to stay, to raise, and to make the Horse light; to teach him to turn, to stop, to firm his Neck, to assure and adjust his Head, and his Croup, without offending his Mouth, or the Place of the Curb; and also to supple and help his Shoulders, and his legs and Feet before.

Therefore I would use it to all Horses whatsoever; for they will go much better with the Bit alone, having their Mouth preserved, and made so sensible, as they will

will be attentive to all the Motions of the Hand; so that there is nothing for the Exercise of the Mannage like it, with a Canon *A la Pignatel*, the Branches *A la Conestable*, and the Cavezone together: But then the Cavezone must be my way, as I told you; and that doth so supple them, and is so right, as it makes all Horses whatsoever, if you work them upon their trot, gallop, stopping, and going Back, with Passenger, and raising them as you ought, and according to the Rules of At: For this makes them subject to the Sense of Feeling, which is the Sense we ought to work on; to feel the Hand, and to feel the Heels, which is all; and not to the Sense of the Sight, which is the Routin of the Pillars, or the Sense of Noise, which is the Routin of Hearing, but only the Sense of Feeling, and only of those two Places, which is the Mouth and the Sides. Seeing is all the Art when they teach Horses Tricks, and Gambols, like *Bankes's Horse*; and though the Ignorant admire them, yet those Persons shall never teach a Horse to go well in the Mannage.

There are many things in the Sense of Feeling, which are to be done with so great Art, Wit, and Judgment, and re-

quire so great Experience of the several Dispositions of Horses, that it is not every Man's Case to be an Horse Man, as it is to make a Dog or a Horse dance : But I am contented to let the Ignorant talk, and think what they will, for I am not concerned with their Folly.

The Cavezone's inward Rein tied short to the Pommel my Way, is excellent to give a Horse an Apuy, and settle him upon the Hand, and make him firm, and his Head steady : So it is excellent for a Horse that is too hard on the Hand ; for the Cavezone's Rein being always within the Turn tied very straight to the Pommel, keeps him from resting too much on the Bit, which makes him leight, and firm on the Hand. The inward Cavezone's Rein tied short to the Pommel, is excellent also to supple a Horse's Shoulders, which is the best thing that can be ; for it gives Apuy where there is none, and where there is too much Apuy it takes it away, and supples his Shoulders extreamly, which is an excellent thing ; it also makes a Horse gallop very right, with his legs, as also his legs very right for *terra a terra* ; for it lengthens his legs within the turn, and shortens his legs without the turn, which is right

it should be. So it is good for working his Shoulders in all kinds, and his Croup last, Leg and Rein of a Side, as also to work Leg and Rein contrary, in all kinds of several Lessons. And this is the rarity of tying the inward Cavezone's Rein short to the Pommel.

The Cavezone (my Way) works powerfully upon the Nose, and so hath the greater pull to give the Horse the greater Ply and Bent, being the part the farthest off from your Hand. And this Ply, or Bent, is from his Nose to his Withers, which is to bend his Neck, and works too on the Shoulders, this is to bend into the turn ; it pulls his Head down too, and makes him look into the turn ; his Head being pulled down when he is prest, puts him more upon the Hanches. This is done with the inward Rein of the Cavezone pulled hard, and straight, and so tied to the Pommel which keeps it at a stay, and is stronger than one's Hand, and hath the same Operation as I told you before ; but when it is tied to the Pommel, it still keeps the right Bent of the Horse, and then I work upon the Bit, either with the Reins separated with both my Hands, or else in my left Hand only when he is thus bent: When

I would passenger him, his Croup in, large or narrow, then I help with the outward Rein of the Bridle; because it is upon the Action of a trot, and that is cross; and therefore must have his legs free without the turn, to lap over his inward legs; and when he is thus tied with the inward Cavezone's Rein, if I would have him to go *le petit* gallop, his Croup in, or *terra a terra*, then I help with the inward Rein of the Bridle, my Hand on the outside of his Neck, and my Knuckles towards his Neck, to put him on the outside of the turn: but *le petit* gallop sometimes on the inside, because it is a gallop, as the outward Rein puts him on the inside of the turn; all this is with his Croup in. If to trot or gallop *D'une piste*, large or narrow Circles, the inward Cavezone's Rein still tied to the Pom-mel, then I help with the inward Rein, and inward leg, or outward Rein to narrow him before; if the piroite, with the outward Rein; if *Demy-Voltoes* upon *Passadoes*, the outward Rein; for all Leaps, the outward Rein; for *Corvets* and *Demy-Ayres*, the outward Rein, for *Corvets* backward, the outward Rein; for *Corvets* forward, the outward Rein; for *terra a terra*, in his length, the inward Rein: And so

Passadoes

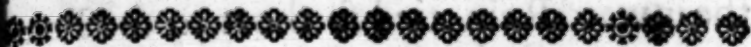
Passadoes, the inward Rein. So, stopping and going back, the inward Rein. All these with the inward Rein of the Cavezone tied straight to the Pommel, which is the best thing in the World, and then help with the several Reins of the Bridle, as Occasion offers you, and as I have told you for all these several things. So that the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Pommel, or else in your Hand, is, for all things whatsoever; Croup, in or out; Trot, Gallop, Passager; all Ayres, stopping, going back, Passadoes; or any thing in the World that is in the Man-
age: For without it no Horse can be perfectly drest, in any kind to have the Ply of his Neck, and to supple his Shoulders, to look into the turn, to have his legs go right, as they ought to do in all Actions; his Body rightly bent, to be part of the Circle he goes in, and bent that Way. So it is all in all for every thing every Ayre, and every Action the Horse can make.

The Cavezone being upon the Nose, preserves the Horse's Mouth, and Bars, and place of the Curb; and it is so effectual, as it will dress a Horse without the Bit, which the Bit shall never do without the

the Cavezone; for the Bars and the Curb are too tender: Besides, the Reins of the Bit can never give him the Ply, nor bend him enough, nor supple his Shoulders, because it is so near you, and works upon the Bars and the Curb; which cannot bend him possibly so, as that upon his Nose, because the Branches of the Bit are so slow, and the Bars and the Curb so low, that there is not Room enough to pull as with a Cavezone, that is so much higher; and hath so much Room to pull, and pulls and plyes him, all from his Nose to his Shoulders, when the other can do little more than pull his Musle, and his Head, and goes no further: The Cavezone's Rein within is for every thing, the Bit otherwise.

To supple his Shoulders, you must help with the outward Rein, and to stay his outward Shoulder with the inward Rein; which hath not near the Force the Cavezone's Rein hath for every thing: Therefore use it in all things, and with all Horses, Colts, half drest Horses, ready Horses, young, middle Age, old, and every Horse, and all Horses; for there is no dressing Horses without it, and with it you will drest all Horses whatsoever, and of what Disposition soever;
weak,

weak, middle Strength, or strong, and reduce all Vices with it ; and when you use the Bit they will go much the better, for having been wrought continually with the Cavezone.



Observations about the Cavezone, about the Ply, or bending the Horse's Shoulders into the turn; and in what Place the Cheeks of the Bit then are, or where they rest.

WHEN the inward Rein of the Cavezone is tied hard to the Pommel, and you pull the inward Rein of the Bridle, his Neck bends so much into the turn, whether upon large Circles, his Croup out, or his Croup in, as then the cheek of the Bit, that is next the turn, is beyond the inside of his Neck or Shoulder, and the outward Cheek, removed according to the distance of the Cheeks, which is much more than the midst of his Neck ; and this Ply supple his Neck and Shoulders extreamly, makes him look into the turn ; Head, Body, legs, and all going most justly, as they ought to do, whether his Croup in, or out. And this is the Quintessence of the Mannage ;
and

and without this no *Horse* can be dress perfectly, or can go justly in any kind, either upon the Ground, or in Ayres; nor possibly do any thing right upon the Circles or Voltoes without it.

I told you this was with the Cavezone, the inward Rein tied so short to the Pom-mel, as pulls in his Head and Neck so much, that it makes the inward Cheek of the Bit very much within his Neck, on the inside of the turn; because the Cavezone works on his Nose, and not on his Bars or Curb, at all; and that's the Reason the inward cheek of the Bit comes so much beyond his Neck on the inside of the turn.



OF THE
OPERATION
OF THE
CAVEZONE.

THE Cavezone is another Business than the Bit; for the Bit works upon the Bars, and the Curb, and hath two Cheeks whereunto the Reins are fastned on both Sides the Horse's Neck; and the Bit is in his Mouth, and the Curb is under his Chin; and these low, especially the Branches: But the Cavezone is upon his Nose, which is much higher, and works only there, without Mouth or Curb.

Well then, the Cavezone being tyed according to my Fashion, though it be to the Girths, if you pull it cross his Neck, with an *Oblique Line*, your Hand on the outside of the turn, your Knuckles towards his Neck, it pulls his Head up a little, and works the same Effect, for the bending his Neck, as the Bit, doth, but much

N

more;

more ; because you gave a greater pull, the Cavezone being upon his Nose ; and being further off you than the Bit, he is bent the more ; because you have more Power to pull.

Consider, that when the inward Rein of the Cavezone is tyed to the Pommel, it is the same *Oblique Line* that the other was, when you had it in your Hand, only a little shorter, and hath the same Operation in every thing, and pulls up his Head a little ; but now, if you have it in your hand, and hold it on the inside of the turn, and pull it hard, and low, then you pull down the *Horse's* Head, and he brings in his outward Shoulder, which is good in large circles, either upon trotting, or galloping, or upon Passenger, for the Reasons I told you before ; so that the Cavezone, and the Bit, differ so much in their operative Working, that when you pull the Cavezone a little high, it puts up the *Horse's* head ; and when you pull the Bit high, and hard, it pulls down his head ; and when you hold the cavezone low, and on the inside of the turn, and pull it hard, it pulls down the *Horse's* head ; and if you hold your hand low with the Bridle, it gives his head Liberty, for the Reasons aforesaid.

Now

Now you see, that the Cavezone and the Bit, differ in their Working very much ; so great is the difference betwixt the Nose and the Mouth. It is true that the inward Cavezone's Rein tyed to the Pommel, is so rare a thing, and so effectual, as you may almost work as you list, with the Bridle ; the Cavezone still doing the Business ; and when one comes to work with the Bridle alone, one may be easily deceived ; except he hath all those considerations, the excellency of the Cavezone, thus tied, may deceive him, when he comes to Work with the Bit alone.

There are three several helps with the inward Cavezone's Rein in your hand ; the first help, is, to pull in his outward Shoulder ; the second help, with it, is, to pull in, his inward Shoulder ; and the third help with it, is, to stay his Shoulders.



Curious and true Observations about the working of the Bit alone, which being not truly considered, no Man can work with the Bit as he ought to do.

BUT to work only with the Reins of the Bridle, which work upon the Bit is another Business ; for now I consider
 N 2 what,

what the Bit is, which is another Engine, that works upon the *Horse's* Bars, and the Curb; and the two branches are like leavers to work on those two Places; as the Reins pull the cheeks, either the inward cheek, or the outward cheek; the Bars, and the Place of the Curb, is much lower than his Nose, on which the Cavezone works; and the Rings where the Reins of the Bridle are fastned, at the Ends of the Cheeks, are much lower than the Bars, or the Curb; but as the Cheeks are pull'd by the Reins of the Bridle, so doth the Bit work upon the Bars or the Curb, accordingly.

As for Example, on the right hand, the Reins separated in both your hands, if you pull the inward Rein from his Neck on the inside, then you pull the inward Cheek into the turn, and then the Mouth of the Bit goes out, and presses the *Horse* on his Bars, without the turn; and makes the *Horse* look out of the turn, and presses the Curb on the outside, and must of Necessity do so: for when the cheeks are pulled in, the Mouth of the Bit must go out: For of what side soever the Cheeks are pulled, the Mouth of the Bit goes still contrary to the Cheeks and must do so in all reason; the Bit being an Instrument that is made so to do, and it cannot be otherwise. The

The same Operation it hath for the left hand; if you pull the inward Rein from his Neck, the Mouth goes still contrary to the Cheek; the Cheek goes inward, and the Mouth goes outward, and the *Horse's* legs are prest on the inside of the turn; therefore in *terra a terra*, the Reins separated in both my *Hands*, I pull the inward Rein beyond his Neck, my Knuckles towards his Neck, which pulls the inward Cheek to me, and then the Mouth goes contrary; that is, the Cheek is put from the turn, and the Mouth bends into the turn, and the *Horse* looks into the turn as he should do, and the *Horse's* legs prest on the outside of the turn, on the left *Hand*: The inward Rein pull'd thus, hath the same Operation; your *Hand* being on the outside of his Neck, and your Knuckles towards his Neck, pulls the inward Cheek from the turn, and the Mouth of the Bit goes into the turn, always contrary, and cannot be otherwise; it presses the *Horse* on the inside of the Bars, and on the inside of the Curb, and so looks into the turn; and his Legs are prest on the outside of the turn, which is proper for *terra a terra*. And thus working with the Bit, produces many excellent things, for *terra a terra*, as I have particularly set down afore.



*Of the working with the outward Rein of
the Bridle*

NOW let us consider the working with the outward Rein of the Bridle, what Operation that hath on the Bars, Curb, and Cheeks; which Cheeks governs Bars and Curb: As for Example; going on the right *Hand*, I turn my *Hand* on the inside of his Neck, this pulls the outward Rein; pulling the outward Rein, pulls the outward cheek to me; then of Necessity it must put the Mouth of the Bit from me, and presses the *Horse* on the outside of the Bars, which is on the outside of the turn, and so presses him on the outside of the Curb, and so the *Horse* must look on the outside of the turn; and all this is, because the cheeks are pull'd to you on the outside; therefore the Mouth of the Bit must go from you; still contrary and never fails, nor cannot: For, it is impossible it should work otherwise; but it is true, that it sup-
ples, and brings in his Shoulders. The reason is this, the *Horse's* legs are prest on the inside of the turn, and then he must needs bring in his Shoulders, though he

is

is prest to look out of the turn. The same thing is for the left Hand, and the same Reasons for every thing, working with the outward Rein of the Bridle. Thus the Bit and Reins are truly anatomized, which never was before ; The outward Rein doth well for the *Piroite*, and so for *Demy-Voltges* upon *Passades*.



*Of the working the Bit when the Horse
- goes straight forward.*

WHEN the *Horse* goes straight forward, either trotting, galloping, or upon *Corvets*, if you hold your Hand low, it presses more upon the Bars, than the Curb, because the Cheeks of the Bit are not pull'd so much to you, or to the Neck of the *Horse* ; and therefore the Curb is not straightned so much, and so the *Horse* is at more Liberty, and his Head a little higher ; but when you hold your Bridle-Hand a little higher, and pull it up to you, then the Curb works more, and pulls down the *Horse's* Head ; the Reason is plain ; for when you pull the Cheeks hard, and up, then you pull the Mouth of the Bit down ; and so the *Horse's* Head, because it works hard

hard on the Curb : For it is most true, that when the Cheeks of the Bit are pull'd up, the Mouth goes down, and straightens the Curb, the Hand being high ; and when the Cheeks are not pull'd hard, then the Curb is slack'd, and the *Horse's* Head at more Liberty ; for the pressure of the Bars and Curb, depends upon the Cheeks ; for when the Cheek goes up, the Mouth of the Bit goes down ; and when the Cheeks of the Bit go down, the Mouth of the Bit goes up. This is the Operation, and the Effects, of the Bit.



Of another Operation of the Bit.

I Must tell you, that the Cheeks lie slope to you, and the Reins more slope, before they come to your Hand ; so the Bit cannot press very much on the *Horse* being so far from the *Perpendicular-Line* : and as the Cheeks are pull'd up, the Mouth goes down ; and as the Cheeks go down, the Mouth goes up ; always contrary.

The *Perpendicular-Line*, is, when you thrust your Hand forward just *Perpendicular*, to the End of the Cheeks, and so pull it up hard, and it works entreamly (upon

upon the Curb, which is to pull his Head down. This I never use; but though fit to tell you what it is, and the Effects of it.



*Of the Operation of the two Reins separated
in both Hands.*

I Told you, the inward Rein prest the Horse on the outside of the turn, and made him look into the turn. And I told you, the outward Rein prest the Horse on the inside of the turn, and made him look out of the turn; and for Passenger, he must be prest on the inside, and therefore to be help'd with the outward Rein: But to make him look into the turn, I help with the inward Rein too; so I help with both Reins in Passenger; the inward Rein to make him look into the turn, and the outward Rein to bring in his outward Shoulder, and to prest him on the inside, for many Reasons that I have already exprest.

hard on the Curb : For it is most true, that when the Cheeks of the Bit are pull'd up, the Mouth goes down, and straightens the Curb, the Hand being high ; and when the Cheeks are not pull'd hard, then the Curb is slack'd, and the *Horse's* Head at more Liberty ; for the pressure of the Bars and Curb, depends upon the Cheeks ; for when the Cheek goes up, the Mouth of the Bit goes down ; and when the Cheeks of the Bit go down, the Mouth of the Bit goes up. This is the Operation, and the Effects, of the Bit.



Of another Operation of the Bit.

I Must tell you, that the Cheeks lie slope to you, and the Reins more slope, before they come to your Hand ; so the Bit cannot press very much on the *Horse* being so far from the *Perpendicular-Line* : and as the Cheeks are pull'd up, the Mouth goes down ; and as the Cheeks go down, the Mouth goes up ; always contrary.

The *Perpendicular-Line*, is, when you thrust your Hand forward just *Perpendicular*, to the End of the Cheeks, and so pull it up hard, and it works entreamly (upon

upon the Curb, which is to pull his Head down. This I never use; but though fit to tell you what it is, and the Effects of it.



*Of the Operation of the two Reins separated.
in both Hands.*

I Told you, the inward Rein prest the *Horse* on the outside of the turn, and made him look into the turn. And I told you, the outward Rein prest the *Horse* on the inside of the turn, and made him look out of the turn; and for *Passager*, he must be prest on the inside, and therefore to be help'd with the outward Rein: But to make him look into the turn, I help with the inward Rein too; so I help with both Reins in *Passager*; the inward Rein to make him look into the turn, and the outward Rein to bring in his outward Shoulder, and to press him on the inside, for many Reasons that I have already exprest.



To work with the Bridle in the left Hand only,

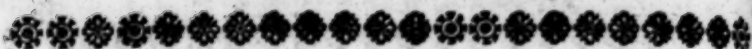
Y Our little Finger separating the Reins, the left Rein lies under the little Finger, and the right Rein lies above the little Finger ; so that for the left Hand, the Hand on the contrary Side of his Neck, the Knuckles towards his Neck, you pull the little Finger to you , and that straightens the left Rein : And for the right Rein, because that lies above the little Finger, your Hand on the outside, your Knuckles towards his Neck ; Here you must bend your Hand inward, and then your little Finger slacker ; and this works the right Rein, as the left Rein the little Finger straightned, and the Ring-Finger slack'd ; and because the *Horse's* Body should not rise too high, keep the Bridle-Hand low, and that will put him upon the Hanches : And this is the Truth and Quintessence of the Bridle-Hand, for the inward Rein of either Side.



*Of the Operation of the outward Rein of
the Bridle.*

FOR the right Hand, you must turn up your little Finger; and as you put it up, put it a little on the inside of the turn; but you must bring in your outward Shoulder at the same Time: And for the left Hand, turn up your little Finger, and your Thumb down as you did before; and at the same Time put it on the inside of the turn, and bring in your outward Shoulder moderately.

THE



THE

Reins being both in your left Hand,

HOW

To work them both at one Time for
PASSAGER.

FOR the right Hand put your Hand on the outside; and for the left Hand, put your Hand without his Neck on the inside of the Turn, and that pulls and works the outward Rein. So now you see, on both Hands, how you can perfectly work both Reins at one Time, which is the Quintessence of Passenger; the reasons I have told you afore.

Of the Use of the two Reins of the Bridle.

YOU must help with the outward rein of the Bridle in the Piroite, because his fore Parts are straightned, and his hinder Parts at Liberty; so you must Help with the outward rein of the
 bridle

Bridle for *Demy-Voltoes*, and in *Passades* by a Wall; because his fore Parts are straightned, and his hinder Parts at Liberty, being but half a Piroite; so you must help with the outward Rein of the Bridle, in Corvets backward upon a straight Line, his fore Parts being straightned; and his hinder Parts at Liberty, because they lead: So you must help with the outward Rein of the Bridle, in all Leaps, Croupadoes, Balotadoes, and Capriols; either forward, or upon Voltoes; because his fore parts are straightned, and his Croup at Liberty, or else he could not leap.

For *Terra a Terra*, you must help with the inward Rein of the Bridle; because then his hinder parts are straightned, and his fore parts enlarged; so with the inward Rein for *Demy Voltoes*, because his hinder Parts are straightned, and his fore Parts enlarged: But in Corvets upon Voltoes, the outward Rein, because his hinder Parts are subjected, and his fore Parts enlarged, and so forward; in Corvets with the outward Rein, because there his hinder Parts are subjected, and his fore Parts are enlarged, and at Liberty to go forward, because they lead.



*Observations how to hold the Reins of the
Bridle.*

WHensoever you hold your Hand even with the Pommel, it slackens the Curb; if in the middle of the Pommel, it is slacken'd more; if upon his Neck, it is slackened most, because it is farthest from the perpendicular Line; and the higher you hold your Bridle Hand above the Pommel, the Curb is straightened the more; because you can pull harder, and go nearer, by that Means, to the Perpendicular Line. The Hand should never be above two or three Fingers above the Pommel, a little forwarder, and easie, but firm; for there is nothing makes a Horse go more on the Hanches, than a light Hand, and firm; for when he hath nothing to rest on before, he will rest behind; for, he will rest on something; and when he rests behind, that's upon the Hanches: A light Hand is the greatest Secret we have; but there is no Horse can be firm of the Hand, except he suffers the Curb and obey it.

Here ends the Quintessence of working with the Cavezone, and the Bridle.

My

M Y

O P I N I O N

F O R

S P U R S.

TH E Spurs ought rather to be long neck'd, than short neck'd; because with long neck'd Spurs, the Rider makes less Motion, either in correcting, or helping his Horse, which a good Horse-Man should always do; for he that is the quietest on Horse-Back, is the greatest Master; for ill Horse-Men cannot sit still on Horse-Back.

The Fashion of the Spurs should be *A la Conestable*, the Wans not too long, and compass'd, and black Sanguine; the Buckles and Rowels of Silver, not burnisht; because they do not rust as Iron, and therefore rankles not a Horse's Sides so much. The Rowels should contain six Points, for that hits a Horse best; five Points are too few: And the Rowels should be as sharp as possible can be; for it is much better to let him bleed freely, than with dull Spurs to raise Knobs and Bunches

Q 2

Bunches on his Side, which might give him the Farsey; but bleeding can do him no hurt, when dull Spurs may: Besides, there is nothing doth a Horse so much good, as to make him smart, when you correct him: There is, therefore, nothing like sharp Spurs, being used discreetly, to make all Horses whatsoever know them, fear them, and obey them, for until they suffer, with Obedience, the Spurs, they are but half *Horses*, and never drest.

The *Shambriere* is too dull a Thing; and so are all Whips, Hand Whips, and all; Whips of Wyre fetch Blood, but not in the right Place, as Spurs do. A Bulls Pisle is good for a Colt, before you wear Spurs, but afterward it is too dull; a smart Rod is much better than any of them; but the Spurs beyond all.



Of the several Corrections, and Helps with the Spurs.

First, the Correction of the Spurs being a Punishment comes after a Fault is committed, either to put in his Buttock or Croup, when he puts it out;

or

or else to put it out, when he puts it too much in, when he should be entier; this is to be done with one Spur, and sometimes with both Spurs; he is to be corrected with both Spurs when he is resty, and will not go forward; or to settle him on the Hand when he joggles his Head, then both the Spurs will do him good; or when he is Apprehensive, and Ombrageux, the Spurs may do him good; or that he offers to bite or strike, then the Spurs will divert him; or that he rises too high, or Bolts, then give him the Spurs; when he is falling half Way down, then the Spurs will cure him; but if you give him the Spurs, just when he is rising, then it may bring him over, if he will not advance, which is to rise before; then a good Stroke with both the Spurs, will make him rise; if he be a dull Jade, then smartly to give him the Spurs is good; or that he is lazy, or slack of his Mannage, then to give him the Spurs quickens him.

And so the Spurs are for many Things as a Correction, and therefore you must give them as strongly and sharply, still as you can, with all your Strength; and have very sharp Spurs too, that he may feel them to the Purpose, so that Blood

may follow; for otherwise it is not a Correction: You must strike the *Horse* always some three or four Fingers behind the Girths, and sometimes towards the Flanks, if he be to put in his Croup: And, believe it, there is nothing like the Spurs; for, what makes him sensible to the *Heel*, but the Spurs? Therefore use them, and use them until he obey you; for no *Horse* can be a ready *Horse*, until he obeys the *Heel*.

But, remember you do not dull him with the Spurs; for then he will not care for them no more than a Stone, or a Block; therefore you must give them sharply, when you give them; but give them but seldom, and upon just Occasion.

When he maliciously rebels against what you would have him do, leave not spurring of him, and soundly, until he obey you: And when he obeys you in the least kind, light off, and send him to the Stable, and the next Morning try him again; and if he obey in the least kind cherish him, and make much of him; and forgive him many Faults the next Morning, that he may see you have Mercy as well as Justice, and that you can Reward, as well as punish.

And

And now you see, Corrections are better than Helps, and of what great Efficacy the Spurs timely and discreetly given, are for the dressing of Horses; for there is but the Hand and the Heels, and so the Spurs are half the Business in dressing Horses; only the Hand hath the Preheminence: Though there be two Spurs, and but one Bridle, because the Horse hath but one Mouth, and two Sides; yet, if the Horse be not settled upon the Hand, you cannot make him subject to the Heels. But the Correction of the Spurs is so necessary, and effectual, as no Horse can be made a ready Horse without them; and therefore esteem them highly, next settling a Horse upon the Hand; which must be first.

All helps are to prevent Faults, and to go before Faults; as Corrections come after Faults, to punish for Offending. The Spurs are to be used as a help thus; when the Horse goes *terra a terra*, your outward Leg close to him when he slacks, turn your Heel to him to pinch him with the Spurs; which you may easily do, even to Blood, and no Body perceive it; for that ought to be done neatly, and delicately, because the Spurs are a neat, and most excellent Help, and the Quintessence of all

all helps in the *Mannage*; and if the *Horse* suffer and obey this, whilst you stay him on the Hand, you may say, he is an excellent *Horse*.

This quickens him, and puts him forward; but yet let me tell you, though this is an excellent help for *terra a terra*, yet it is not so good a help for *terra a terra*, as it is for all *Ayres*; either to pinch him with both the Spurs, or with but one: And the reason, is, because it makes him Croup more, and puts him together on his hinder-parts, than puts him forward; and therefore more proper for all manner of *Ayres*, than for *terra a terra*, though very good for both.

And thus much for that excellent help with the Spurs, call'd pinching.

There is another help with the Spurs, which I call a Help, because it is not so violent as a Correction, and is not so Presfing as Pinching; but between Spurring and Pinching; and that is thus: When the *Horse* gallops his Croup in, or *terra a terra*, if he obeys not the Leg enough, being close to him, or very near it, then make the motion with your Leg, as if you did spur him, and hit him with your Spur, with as gentle a touch as can be; and no more than to let him feel it a little;

tle; and this is the gentlest of all things, with the Spurs, which makes him obey the Spurs, and puts him forward, and is excellent for *terra a terra*, or *Le petit* Gallop his *Croup* in, and much better than Pinching; for it puts him forward, and makes him obey the Spurs at the same time; but it is not good for *Ayres*; for there he should leap upwards, and go forward, but very little; and therefore Pinching is best for *Ayres*, because it raises his *Croup*, and therefore goes not forward; and that little touch with the Spur, like spurring, is good for *terra a terra*, and *Le petit* gallop his *Croup* in, because it puts him forward, and makes him obey the Spur.

If your *Horse* understands this Correction, and the two several Helps with the Spurs, being made sensible to him, you may be well assured he will need none of them after a while, but be so sensible, as he will go freely, and obey you willingly, only with the Calf of your Leg; for the help of the Thighs is a ridiculous conceit: for indeed, there is no helps but the Spurs, and the Calf of the Legs, that the *Horse* can possibly feel.



OF THE SECRET HELPS

OF THE

Calf of the *LEG* and *SPURS*.

WHEN you are stiff in the Hams, which is putting down your Heel, then the Calf of the Leg comes to the Horse, but the Heel is removed from him. When you bend in the Hams, which is to put down your Toes, then the Calf of the Leg is removed from him, but the Heel comes to him. These are as great Truths, as they are Secrets.

There is nothing in the World makes Horses Resty and Vicious many several ways like the Spurs, given out of time, and nothing in the World dresses Horses perfectly, like the Spurs given in time.

Now you have the Perfection of the Hand and the Heels, which is the only thing to dress Horses perfectly withal, and nothing else.

O

Of the ROD.

THE Rod we use seldom for a Correction, but for Helps, and that many times more for Grace than Use; for one Rod will serve us half a Year: 'Tis the Hand and the Heels that dresses *Horses*, and nothing else.

The helps with the Rod, are not so good for soldiers *Horses*, for they should go only with the Hand and the Heel; for the Sword must be in your Right Hand, and not the Rod: But you may use it, to shew it still on the contrary side on which he goes, or hold it up with a Grace at every Change.

For Terra a Terra with the Rod.

On the Right Hand, hold up your Rod high, with a Grace, and give him sometimes a blow upon the Shoulders, if there be need; and sometimes a blow over the Shoulders upon the *Croup*, if he requires it.

For *terra a terra* on the Left Hand, hold the Rod up high, or put it to his Flank, with a Grace, and hold it there during his Voltoes, or give him a blow with it on the Flank, or on the Shoulder, if he requires it.

Use

Use the same helps with the Rod, upon *Demy-Voltoes*, or *Passades*: For the *Pi-roite*, hold it on the contrary side still.

For Corvets with the Rod.

On the Right Hand in *Voltoes*, hold the Rod somewhat short, and help him cross the Neck, with a Grace, sometimes touching him, and sometimes not, and a good blow now and then, if he requires it: On the Left Hand in *Corvets*, help him on the Right Shoulder, with a Grace, and a just time.

Another help with the Rod in *Corvets*, is, to hold the Rod a little long, and to whisk and shake it forwards and backwards, with your Arm up, but not straight rather bowing a little in the Elbow: when you go forward, the *Horse's* right side to the Wall; there is no help with the Rod more Graceful, than to strike the Wall perpetually with the Rod.

To



To help with the Rod in all manner of Leaps.

TO whisk the Rod forward, and backward, is a graceful help, but it forces a Horse a little too forward, until he be used to it.

To help the Horse with the Rod, not over your shoulder, but over the bent of your Arm, your Arm from your Body, and a little bowed, so that the point of the Rod falls in the middle of his croup, is a graceful help, but somewhat difficult to do.

But the best and surest help, though not so graceful, is, to turn the Rod in your Hand, the point toward the Horse's croup, and help him so every time, and in time, one stroke only ; but if he raises not his croup enough, then help him *De tout temps*, which is with two or three strokes together, in time : And this is the surest help.

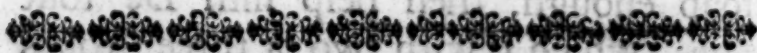
If your Horse be very light behind, which few are, then help him only before with the Rod, and in time.

P

If

If you would make your Horse only croup with his hinder-parts, and not strike out, then help him on the middle of his croup; if you would have him strike out, then help him with your Rod, on the setting on of his Dock: And if you would have him put both his hinder-legs under his Belly, then strike him with the Rod a little above the Gambrels. So these three several helps with the Rod, makes your Horse to croup, to strike out, and to put his hinder-legs under his Belly.

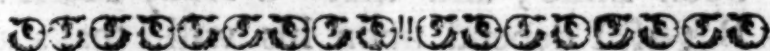
But there is no help with the Rod, like helping him with two Rods; one to raise him before, and the other Rod to help him under his Belly; which puts him so much upon the Hanches, as nothing is like it, or near it, upon corvets, when he is tied short, my new way, at the single Pillar.



Of the Voice.

THe voice is used three manner of ways; either as a correction, by threatning; or as a help, to encourage the Horse; or as a courtship to him, by flattering

flattering of him; which all three, we seldom or never use: For it is not the sense of hearing, or sight; but the sense of touch, and only the hand, and the heels, that dresses Horses perfectly.



Of the Tongue.

THe help of the Tongue is an excellent help to incourage, and put a Horse together, either in terra a terra; but especially in all Ayres, nothing better.



How Horses are to be rewarded, and punished: and that fear doth much; love, little.

IT is impossible to dress any Horse, but first he must know, and acknowledge me to be his Master, by obeying me: That is, he must fear me, and out of that fear, love me, and so obey me. For it is fear makes every Body obey, both Man and Beast; and therefore see

that he fears you, and then it is for his own sake he obeys you ; because else he would be punished : And love is not so sure a hold, for there I depend upon his will ; but when he fears me, he depends upon mine ; and that's a ready Horse : But if I depend upon his will, that's a ready Man. Therefore love doth no good, but fear doth all : And so let them fear you, which is the ground of dressing all Horses whatsoever. And this is the counsel of a friend.

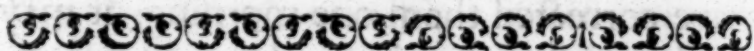
Pluvinel, and most of the great Masters in Horse-manship, praise always gentleness, and flatteries, and making much of Horses, either by clapping, stroking them, or speaking flatteringly unto them, or giving them some reward to eat : And *Pluvinel* says, one ought to be a prodigal in caressing, and making much of them, and a niggard in corrections, and careful not to offend them ; and that there is no other way to dress Horses but this. But some Horse-men never make much of them, or very rarely ; neither abroad, before they get up, when they ride them, nor when they light, nor in the stable ; and yet these Horses go well. They do not threaten
them

them with the Voice, or ever speak to them, and no doubt but they do it on purpose to keep them in subjection, and fear of them : For familiarity breeds contempt ; and curtesy doth no good, but makes them presume ; and fear makes them diligent still to obey.

Neither do they use the Rod at all ; no more do I ; for one Rod will serve me almost a Year ; nor use the Voice, but a good hand, and good heels, which only dresses Horses ; and seldom lets a fault escape without punishment. When they have corrected them one morning, it may be they will spur them the next morning ; but otherwise never correct them without a fault ; and if they make none, they are not punisht ; and there's their reward. Certainly this may be good for dressing of Horses.

For my part, when they do well, I cherish and reward them ; and when they do ill, I punish them, for, hope of reward, and fear of punishment, governs this whole World ; not only Men, but Horses : And thus they will chuse the reward, and shun the punishment. They are punisht with nothing but the spurs ; for all whips, even of wyre,

chambrieres, or Bulls-pisles, are toys. The Rod is more for grace than use; but reward, or no reward, is nothing at all in comparison of the art of riding: For, let an ignorant Fellow (which most are for any thing I can perceive) flatter his Horse, and not punish him; or punish him, and not flatter him; or punish and flatter him; yet I will not flatter the Rider, but will tell you, he shall spoil your Horse, let him do what he will; because he wants art.



Opposition in Horses against the Rider, a sign of strength and spirit.

BE not discouraged if your Horse do oppose you, for it shews strength, spirit, and stomach; and a Horse having all those, cannot chuse but be made a ready-horse, if he be under the discipline of an understanding hand, and knowing heels.

When a Horse doth not rebel, it shews weakness, and faintness of spirit, and no courage; and where Nature is so much wanting, it is hard for art to supply

ply it: But truly I never knew any Horse in my life, but before he was perfectly drest, would rebel, and extreamly too, and a great while before he would go freely; but a little still, against his will, until he be perfectly drest.

Certainly there is no Horse but will strive at the first in the dressing, to have his own will, rather than to obey your will; nor doth any Horse love subjection, nor any other creature, until there is no remedy, and then they obey; and the custom of obedience makes them ready-horses: They will strive all the ways possibly they can, to be free, and not subjected; but when they see it will not be, then they yield, and not before. So they deserve no thanks for their obedience.

No Man in the World, no, not the wisest, if he were put in the form of a Horse, with his supreme understanding, could possibly find out more subtle ways to oppose a Man, than a Horse will; nay, nor near so many, I dare say: Whence I conclude, that the Horse must know you are his master; that is, he must fear you, and then he will love you for his own sake: Fear is
the

the sure hold ; for fear doth all things in this World : Love, little ; and therefore let your Horse fear you.



What makes a Horse go by Rote, or Routine.

THat which makes a Horse go by rote, or routine, is absolutely his Eyes ; and therefore I would advise you, to have as few marks as you can in the mannage : That is, no pillars but in the outside, and there but one for my way upon Ayres, and that will not fix his sight ; so that then he will attend the Hand and the Heel : Nor too near the Walls, for then his Eyes will attend them ; nor to make him go in one place always ; for there his Eyes will make him go by rote again : but several places will make him attend the Hand and the Heel. And this way, and no other, will cure him of going by rote.

That



That a Horse of three Years old is too young for the mannage.

A Young Horse of three Years old, is but a gristle, and easily spoil'd ; and besides, his understanding is not come to him ; so that wanting understanding, and being so weak, you must have patience to stay three years more at the least, until he hath both : Stops, and going back, will strain his back, and spoil him : so that I would rather have a Horse of six, seven, or eight years old, so he be sound and not vitious, than a Horse of three years old ; for I can force him, and make him a ready-horse in three months.

But some will say Boys learn best, and so Colts : I answer, no ; for if men could be beaten to it, as Boys are, they would learn much better, and sooner : but I can force my Horses of those years ; and having both understanding, and strength, they will and must of necessity learn much sooner and better.

How

How a Man should sit perfectly on Horse-back.

BEfore he mounts his Horse, he must see every thing in order about the Horse; which is done in an instant, without peering and prying about every thing; as they say, pour faire l'entendu.

When he is in the saddle, (for I suppose most Men know how to get up) he must sit down in the saddle upon his twist, and not on his Buttocks; though most think nature made those to sit on, but not on Horse-back.

Being plac'd upon his twist, in the middle of the saddle, advancing towards the pommel of the saddle, as much as he can; leaving a handful of space between his hinder-parts and the cantle, or l'Arçon of the saddle, his legs being straight down, as if he were on foot, his knees and thighs turned inwards to the saddle; holding both of them fast, as if they were glewed to the saddle, (for a Horse-man hath nothing but those two with the counterpoize of his Body to keep him on Horse-back) his feet planted firmly upon the
the

the stirrups; his heels a little lower than his Toes, that the end of his Toes may pass the stirrups half an inch, or a little more, and stiff in the hams, or jarrets, his legs not too far from the Horse's sides, nor too near, that is, not to touch them; which is of great use for helps, that I will shew you hereafter.

The reins of the bridle are to be in the left-hand, his little finger separating the reins, and grasping the rest in his hand, with his thumb upon the reins, his arm bent close to his body, but not constrain'd; his bridle-hand some three fingers above the pommel, and some two fingers before the pommel, that the pommel may not hinder the reins in their working, and just over the neck of the Horse.

In the right-hand, he must have a whistling rod, not too long, like an angle-rod; nor too short, like a poinçon; but, if either, let it be short; for there are many graceful helps with a short rod, that a long rod will not admit of: you must hold it a little off, from that end beyond your hand; not only to make much of your Horse with it, but to hold it the faster. The right-hand, where the rod is, ought to be a little before

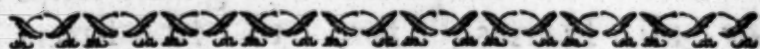
fore your bridle-hand, and the right arm a little looser, than your left arm ; but not too far from your body, the point of the rod bending a little inwards, your breast out.

You must look a little gay, and pleasantly, but not laughing ; and look directly between the Horse's ears, when he goes forwards : I do not mean, you should be stiff, like a stake, or like a statue on Horse-back, but much otherwise ; that is, free, and with all the liberty in the world, as the *French-man* says, in dancing, *A la negligence* ; and so I would have a Man on Horse-back, *En cavalier*, and not formal ; for that shews a scholar, more than a master ; and I never saw any formality, but methought it lookt something of the simple and foolish.

The feat is so much, (as you shall see hereafter) as it is the only thing that makes a Horse go perfectly ; and the very manner of sitting is beyond all other helps : Therefore despise it not, for I dare boldly say, he that is not *bel homme de cheval*, shall never be *bon homme de cheval*.

For, the reins both of the Bridle and the cavezone, I have shewed you that
which

which was never yet known before: And so this is enough for the seat of the Cavalier.



The secret helps of the Horse-man's Body.

YOU must sit straight upon the twist, and always keep yourself so, what action soever the Horse makes; and to that end, you should always go to that which comes to you, which is a contrary action. As for example; the Horse rises before, then you must put your body a little forward to him; for, did you go along with the Horse, you must put it backward.

If the Horse strikes behind, or raises his croup, you must put your body backwards, which is contrary to the Horse's motion; for, did you follow the Horse, you must put your Body forward, and be thrown: But the best, is, to sit straight, and the action of the Horse will keep you on your twist.

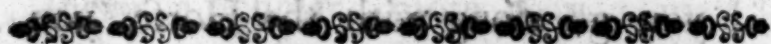
You must understand, that the body on Horse-back, is divided into three parts, two moveable, and one immoveable: The moveable is the body to the

Q

waist;

waist; the immoveable, from the waist to the knees; and the other moveable from the knees to the foot.

The bodies-helps are to be gentle helps for all Horses; for, to sit strong on Horse-back, astonishes the weak Horse, makes the strong go counter-times, and forces him too much; makes a furious Horse mad; makes a resty Horse more resty; and a Horse hard on the hand, to run away, and displeases all sorts of Horses. You are not neither to sit weak on Horse-back, but to sit easy; gentle helps being best: For they fit all Horses, and please all Horses.



The new and true method of working at first, either Colts, young Horses, or old ignorant Horses, upon large circles D'une piste.

NOW that you are on Horse-back, know how to sit, and know all your helps; I will shew you how to dress your Horse perfectly: Which is in the manner following.

The cavezone, being my way, the reins in your hand, the inward cavezone's
rein

rein pull'd hard, and low, on the inside of the turn; leg and rein of a side that is within the turn; which brings in the Horse's outward shoulder, the bridle-hand low, and a little on the out-side, or inside, as you see occasion: This gives the Horse a good Apuy, working more on the bars than on the curb, though it works on both.

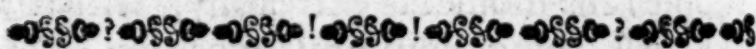
The Horse's croup being out, and pulling in his outward shoulder, presses the Horse on the inside, and fits him to gallop large, D'une piste; as also for a trot, to supple his shoulders, being prest.

The inside puts him upon the shoulders, which gives him an Apuy, and supples his shoulders extreamly, which is the first thing you must work on; for, without suppling a Horse's shoulders extreamly, he can never do any thing; for that is the first and principal business, and nothing doth it like the cavezone (my way.)

Give him no other lesson than this, until he be very supple on the Shoulders upon his trot; for that is the foundation of all things in the mannage, to supple him, and make him light; and never gallop him until he be so light, as he offers to gallop of himself; and this trot-

ting, and galloping large, as they call it, D'une piste, though his croup be out, and the Horse leans so much on the inside, as you would think he would fall, he goes the surer for it.

Stop him but seldom; and when you do, stay him rather by little, and little, than with a sudden stop; for that weakens a young Horse's reins, and back very much; and when he is on the hand, then put your body back to put him upon the hanches, and give him harder stops; but then your outward leg is to put in his outward leg, or else he cannot stop upon the hanches, the outward hanch being out.



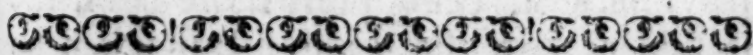
Of large circles upon a trot.

WHen you work your Horse upon large circles D'une piste, upon a trot, with the cavezone (my way) in your hand, leg and rein on the inside, either upon large or narrow circles, D'une piste, upon his trot, where his legs in that action are cross, you must know how they ought to go; which is thus:

His hinder-leg on the inside of the turn, and his fore-leg on the outside of the

the turn, are lifted up together at a time ; and his hinder-leg on the inside of the turn, when it is set down, is set a little beyond his outward hinder-leg, and a little forwarder ; and his fore-leg without the turn, is set down at the same time, a little forwarder than his inward fore-leg, and both circularly ; and when he changes his legs cross, then his outward hinder-leg is set before his inward hinder-leg, and his inward fore-leg before his outward fore-leg, and beyond it, and both circularly.

His inward hinder-leg being set down thus, must of necessity bend, and supple his shoulders, and the cavezone's inward rein being wrought, as I told you before, the inward leg must of necessity put out his croup, and supple his shoulders ; and thus he is bent and suppled extreamly, and can never be entier ; and his legs always go right and truly, which is the most excellent lesson that can be.



Of Galloping upon circles D'une piste.

TO work your Horse D'une piste, upon large, or narrow circles, the cavezone's rein in your hand, leg and rein on the inside, and the outward rein of the
Q 3 bridle,

bridle, if need be, to supple his shoulders pulling the inward rein hard to bring in his outward shoulder, upon a gallop; I will tell you how his legs go, for a gallop is another Action than a Trot; for a Trot is cross, and a Gallop is both of a side, always leading with his legs within the turn, and makes four distinct times, with his four legs, as I have shew'd you before.

Well then, his fore-leg within the turn leads circularly, and is set down before, and beyond his outward fore-leg, and his hinder-leg within the turn follows; but is set down a little before his outward hinder-leg, and a little beyond it, which supple his shoulders; and his hinder parts being put out thus, makes him gallop right, and nothing like it.

This is a most excellent lesson, and the foundation of all things in the mannage: To trot and gallop thus, his fore-parts come towards the centre, and his hinder-parts flies it, being prest more upon the shoulders than the croup: But when he is thus prest, and supple in the shoulders, the croup is easily wrought afterwards.

I must tell you, in these lessons the Horse is prest, and leans extreamly on the inside of the turn, which is rare, to supple his shoulders: To walk him thus too, and stop him with your outward leg, is very good.

Another excellent Lesson to supple a Horse's shoulders.

GO as if the horse's head was to the pillar, (though you have none) and on the left hand, and pull the inward cavezone's Rein hard to you ; and though he goes on the left hand, his shoulders are suppled for the right. Then go on the right hand, and pull the inward cavezone's Rein hard to you ; though the horse goes on the right hand, yet his shoulders are suppled for the left.

This is an admirable lesson to supple a horse's shoulders; and thus he shall never be entier.



Another lesson for suppling a Horse's shoulders upon large Circles.

UPON large circles, his croup out ; to all the helps, both with the Cavezone, Bridle, Reins, Legs, and Body, as I told you before ; only this is to be added, for a while, till the Horse is accustomed to it.

I would have you trot him without stopping of him upon his trot ; but from his trot to gallop him, Le petit Gallop gently ;

gently ; and from his gallop to his trot again : and though of the same hand still, yet change him from trot to gallop, and from gallop to trot, until you think it sufficient, and then stop him, either upon a trot, or gallop, which you please : This is a most excellent Lesson ; not only to supple his shoulders, but to make him attend, and obey the Will of his Rider ; having no continued rule to fix his mind on, to go by rote, either in trotting or galloping, but still to obey the Man, as he helps or commands him to either ; and not knowing when it is, he must absolutely obey both the hand and the heels ; and so stopping sometimes upon a Trot, and sometimes upon a Gallop ; not knowing when he should be stopt, nor where he should be stopt, makes him still to obey the Man's both hand and heels ; and therefore a better lesson cannot be in the world ; and therefore use it : For, all our end is, To make a Horse obey the Hand and the Heels ; and this lesson doth it, as much as any lesson can do.

If the Horse retain his Forces, then gallop him fast, and quick ; and then softly again, and then fast again, as occasion serves : And this softly, and quick, upon his gallop, (not knowing when he must

do either) makes him obey both his Rider's hand, and heels; which is the end of our work, and the quintessence of the man-nage.

When you have suppled the Horse sufficiently on the shoulders, and find him hard on the hand, in not being upon the Hanches; then trot him large D'une piste, and stop him often, and good hard stops with your outward Leg; and pull him down, your body back, and when he least thinks of it; but if he would stop of himself, put him forward without stopping of him, and stop him when he thinks not of it, and do the same upon a gallop: Stop him often, and hard, and put him back sometimes, and you will find him very much upon the hanches. This is an excellent lesson, both to settle him on the hand, and to put him on the hanches: But when you have done that, you must not continue this Lesson long, for it pinches a Horse very much on the back; besides, it makes him fearful to go forward, and so may make him resty, and many inconveniences may come of it; therefore your own judgment must work according to occasion, when you do stop him (as I formerly have told you:) You must stop him
upon

upon a walk too, as well as a upon a trot, or a gallop.

All these Lessons are only to supple a Horse's shoulders; and see that you use no other lessons than these, until the horse be extreamly supple of his shoulders, and be firm on the hand: These are rare lessons, to settle a horse upon the hand, to supple his shoulders, to make him look into the turn, to trot and gallop right, (as he should do) both legs, head, neck, body, and all: And, besides these, if you work, as I have told you, the horse shall never be entier; which the *Italians* call the *credenza*, which is the worse vice a horse can have, and the most dangerous. And these lessons, with the *cavezone* (my way) hath these rare operations.

You must always use these lessons, untill the Horse be extreamly supple of his shoulders, being the principal thing in dressing horses, and the first of our work: Horses do nothing but by custom, and habit, with often repetitions to fortify their memories; and by good lessons, and methodical; and so do all men in all things that they do, good or bad: Therefore, give these good lessons, and repeat them often to your Horse, and you will find by them benefit, and contentment:

And

And remember, that I work upon the understanding of a Horse, more than the labour of his Body ; for I assure you, he hath imagination, memory and judgment; let the learned say what they please : I work upon those three faculties ; and that is the cause my Horses go so well.

Here is now the end of all my lessons, in working a horse to supple his shoulders ; which if you can do, according to those lessons, then I will assure you, you have done the better half of the work, in dressing and making up a perfect Horse.

The next lessons are the other half, and the easier ; which is, to make him sensible to the heels ; and those shall follow, after some certain maxims, which I will insert here, and pray you to mark, and remember them.

The most certain means to unite a Horse's forces ; to assure, and settle his head, and his hanches ; to make him light on the hand ; and to make him capable of all justness and firmness in all sorts of Ayres, and Mannages ; depends absolutely on the perfection on the stop (as I have told you ;) but first he must be loosen'd and suppled upon the trot.

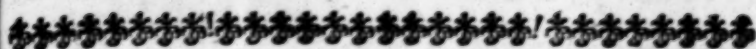
Going back is a remedy, to put him upon the hanches ; to accommodate, and ad-

adjust his hinder-feet; and settle him on the hand; and to make him light before; to stop lightly, and in just proportion.

You must never gallop your Horse, until he be so light upon his trot, as he begins to gallop of himself: For the exercise of the trot, is the first, and most necessary foundation to make him light; and is the ground of every lesson, which can make the Horse adroit, and obedient; and on which must be the foundation of all sorts of Mannages.

The property of the gallop, is, to give him a good apuy, and to settle his head; and if he have too much Fougue, or Fire, Le petit gallop will appease him, and give him patience; and if he plays too much on the back, it will take it off: but all upon large circles: It tempers his Spirits, makes him well-winded, and takes away his too violent apprehensions, and diverts him from evil designs of jades tricks; of restiness, and double-heart, and supples all his members.

Excellent



Excellent Notes to make an End of the working of the Horses Shoulders.

HAVING shewed you, how you should work, and supple the *Horses* Shoulders, with the Cavezone's Rein in your Hand, and not tied to Pommel, which is the better half of our Work; I will shew you the other half; which is, to make him obey the Heels, and work both Shoulders and Croup together; the Cavezone's Rein still in your Hand, and not tied to the Pommel.

To work the *Horses* Croup and Shoulders together, is, with the inward Rein, and outward Leg; the inward Rein of the Cavezone in your Hand, and pull'd on the inside of the Turn, to bring in his outward Shoulder, and to press the Horse on the inside of the Turn, that his Legs without the Turn may be free, and at liberty, to lap over his inward Legs; which we call *Passager*, or *En Cavale*, his Croup in. This *Passager*, though it is the action of a Trot with his Legs, yet it is less violent than a Trot, and more than

a Walk ; which is the best Action to teach a horse any thing of a short Trot, and together.

The first Lesson therefore that you must give him, upon this Action, is, his head to the Wall, pulling the inward Cavezone's Rein hard to you, on the inside, and helping at the same time, with your outward Leg, the Horse to go Byas, his Shoulders before his croup ; which makes him narrow behind, and so upon the Hanches ; because he is upon the Action of a Trot, his Legs being crost.

If he do not obey the Heel, give him the Spur gently on that side ; when the Horse goes thus, he is then prest on the inside of the Turn ; if this be on the Right-hand, then it is but changing your Bridle-hand into your Right-Hand, and the left Cavezone's Rein in your Left-hand, and pull it hard, on the inside, to you, and your outward Leg ; and make him do as much on the Left-hand, Legs and Rein contrary ; and if he do not obey the Heel, give him the Spur with your outward Leg. Continue this Lesson until you find him obedient to your Heels : You may make him go Byas in

an open Field, the same way, with the same Helps.

Of the Voltoes in Passager.

WHen he obeys perfectly the Heel, upon this Lesson of Byas in Passager, then put him upon his Voltoes, or Circles, upon Passager, pulling the inward Cavezone's Rein on the inside of his Neck, hard to you, to bring in his outward Shoulder; and your contrary Leg, Leg and Rein contrary, bending his Neck extreamly; and if he do not obey the Heel, give him the Spur with your outward Leg, and then do as much on the other Hand; and when you find him very obedient, upon Passager, a little large, his Croup in, which puts him upon the Hanches; because his Croup is in, and because it is upon the Action of a Trot, and the less Circle, he is always the most prest, and therefore upon the Hanches.

I say, when he is perfectly obedient to your Hand and Heels, upon his Voltoes somewhat large, then make him go upon his Passager, in little more than his length; and if he be obedient to your

Hand and Heel there, on both Hands, he is advanced very far towards a Ready-horse: For, if a Horse obey my Hand and Heel upon Passenger, which is a gentle Motion, and therefore proper to learn a Horse, because it makes him patient, and fortifies his Memory the better. I say, if he be obedient to me upon this action, which is the Quintessence of Dressing Horses, then I can make him do any thing, that his Forces will permit him.

When the Horse is perfect in the aforesaid Lessons, then put him upon his Voltoes, his Croup in; upon *Le petit Gallop*, thus: Pull the inward Cavezone's Rein hard to you on the inside of his Neck, and your outward Leg to help him, poyssing more on the outward Stirrup, than on the inward; and bend his Neck extremely, that he may be prest on the outside of the Turn, which is proper for *Le petit Gallop*, his Croup in; and help him with your Tongue, and he will go presently very perfectly; and giving him good stops, he is advanced very far towards a Ready-horse. There is no Difference here between *le petit Gallop*, and *terra à terra*.

When

When your Horse obeys all these Lessons perfectly; which is, to obey your Hand, and the Heels, teach him to advance; which is, to rise before; without which no Horse can be a Ready-horse: You may do it when you stop him, or upon large Circles, staying him upon the Hand, helping him with your Tongue, and your Legs, and Rod, if there be cause; and put him forward still after it, and raise him again. But if he rises of himself, put him forward, and let him not rise, but when you would have him; and he will very soon obey you.

When he rises perfectly (when you would have him) upon large Circles, then put his Croup in upon his Voltoes, and raise him so; and then feel him upon the Hand, and stay him a little when he is up; and this will both put him upon the Hand, and upon the Hanches.

Why I would not have you raise him before now, was, because it would disorder his Mouth, and put him off of the Hand and make him resty; for many Horses rise restily, because they would not go forward, nor turn; for, until they obey the Hand, and fly the Heel, there is no raising of them.

I would have you always begin upon large Circles his Croup out, and then put in his Croup afterward ; and so end.

When the Horse is perfect in all these former Lessons, then I would have you tie the inward Cavezone's Rein hard to the Pommel, and work him upon all former Lessons so, with the inward Rein and inward Leg ; and the outward Rein, if need be, his Croup out. Upon large Circles, his Croup in, the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Pommel, and help'd with the outward Rein of the Bridle, to press him on the inside of the Turn, for Passager : But when you raise him in Pessadoes, then the inward Rein ; when the inward Cavezone's Rein is tied to the Pommel, then you work most on the Bitt ; for you have nothing else in your Hand.

To help, with the Bridle alone, upon large Circles, his Croup out, inward Rein, and inward Leg ; or outward Rein and inward Leg, if his Shoulders come not in enough ; but upon Passager, with the Bridle alone, the inward Rein, and outward Leg, for the Reasons I have told you.

It is an excellent Lesson to gallop a Horse forth right, and to stop him, and

to raise him only with the Bitt, and then to turn him, helping with the outward Rein, which will prepare him for Passadoes; of which we will talk hereafter.

There is an excellent Lesson, the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Pom-mel, which is this: To Gallop *D'une piste* a narrow Circle, and so four of them, and still put him forward to take the other Circle; and afterward to do the same upon every Circle, his Croup in, Le petit Gallop, or terra a terra; and put him forward to take the next circle, and so as often as you think good to repeat all the four: And this makes him attend the Hand and the Heel, and most obedient to both.

The inward Rein puts the Horse on the outside, indeed all his body, and leans on his outward Hinder-leg, and weighs his Fore-parts up; and therefore on the Hanches.

The outward Rein puts the Horse on the inside, and weighs him down; and therefore on the Shoulders.

You must have a Method to be often repeated in all these good and excellent Lessons; Lesson after Lesson, or else you will never dress any Horse perfectly for terra a terra.

Needful



Needful Observations.

Naturally whensoever a Horse's Shoulders come in, his Croup goes out; and when his Croup is put in too much, his Shoulders go out. As for Example, upon large Circles his Shoulders come in, his Croup goes out; and when his Head is as to the Pillar, (Leg and Rein of a side) his Shoulders come in, and his Croup goes out: Nay, in the right terra a terra, his Shoulders going before, his Croup shuns the center, which is a little out, though you think his Croup is in.

But you will say, how is it then in Passager when his Croup is in? I say, that is another Action than a Gallop, or terra a terra; because then he is upon the Action of a Trot, which is cross, and may better admit to be prest within the Turn, and his Legs at Liberty without the Turn; but yet (if his Shoulders go before his Croup, and is Byas as he ought to be; in respect of his Shoulders) his Croup is a little out.

But

But now for le petit Gallop, or terra a terra; if his Croup be in, and you pull in his outward Shoulder, at the same time, it is a great Force, and unnatural, so as the Horse goes cross with his Legs, and can go no otherwise, and is prest on the inside. It is true, it puts the Horse upon the Hand, and so of Necessity upon the Shoulders, and gives him an Apuy, which all the former Lessons do; so that his Croup in needs it not, and besides, it is false.

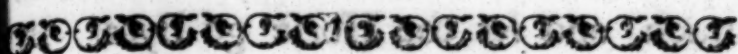
For terra a terra, he should be prest on the outside, to have his Legs at Liberty within to lead; and that they call le petit Gallop, if his Croup be in, which is indeed le petit terra a terra: For being prest on the inside, his Croup in, it is hard to go, because he is bound up; and it is unnatural, both to bring in his outward Shoulder, and to put in his Croup at the same time.

To press him on the inside, and to go on the inside, his Croup in, is a great pressure, and false; for indeed, he is prest for the other side, and would look out of the Turn, did not the inward Cavezone's Rein keep in his Head; howsoever he is on the Shoulders, and his Legs go cross; that is, his inward Foreleg

leg leads, and his outward Hinder-leg follows, and continues so, and is false, and his Croup bunches out: If his Croup goes before his Shoulders, his legs are wide behind, and off of the Hanches, and therefore upon the Shoulders, and false, and goes cross with his legs. That is, his inward Fore-leg leads, and his outward Hinder-leg follows, and continues so.

For the Piroite, his Croup goes a little out, though almost in a place; and therefore he ought to be prest within the Turn; but he goes upon the Shoulders.

So upon Demi-voltoes upon Pessadoes, which is but half a terra a terra, he ought to be prest without the Turn, because it is terra a terra; but his Croup is in a little, and is upon the Hanches.



To work a Horse upon Passager, either with his Head to the Wall, or upon Circles; either with the Cavezone in your Hand, or the Cavezone tied to the Pommel; or the Bridle-reins separated in both your Hands, or the Bridle only in your Left-hand.

UPON Passager, the Cavezone in your Hand; pull the inward Rein of the Cavezone hard within the Turn, to pull the Horses outward Shoulder in, and to press him on the inside, that his outward Legs may be at Liberty, to lap over his inward Legs; and help him with your outward Leg, (Leg and Rein contrary) and let the Horse go Byas.

Upon Passager, the Cavezone's Reins in your Hand another way, and that's this: Pull the inward Cavezone's Rein across his Neck, not too high, your Knuckles towards his Neck, and help him, with the outward Leg, and Rein contrary; and bend your Body to be concave within the Turn, which will press him without the Turn, and give his Legs Liberty within the Turn, to lap

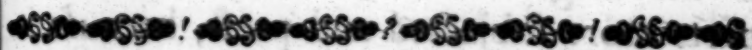
lap over his inward Legs, but not so much, and let the Horse go Byas. By the way, this oblique Line, with the inward Cavezone's Rein, if you press the Horse on the outside, will make him go rarely upon terra a terra.

Upon Passager, the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Pommel, (having nothing in your Hand but the Bridle to work withal) you may safely work with the outward Rein of the Bridle, because the Horse cannot look on the outside, and that because the inward Cavezone's Rein being tied to the Pommel pulls in his Head so much, and the outward Rein will press him on the inside, which is proper for Passager, as I have told you: If you press the Horse on the outside, though the Rein be tied to the Pommel, he will go terra a terra rarely, if he goes Byas.

Upon Passager, the Bridle-reins separated in both your Hands, you must help with the inward Rein, to make him look into the Turn; and help also with the outward Rein, to bring in his outward Shoulder, to press him within the Turn, for the Reasons I have told you: But if you press the Horse on the outside with the inward Rein, he will go rarely terra a terra.

Here

Here you have all the Ways of working a Horse upon Passenger, and I insist the more upon it, because it is the Quintessence of working Horses in the Manage, and the Elixer in Horse-manship; for if a Horse obeys me perfectly in Passenger, being obedient to my Hand and Heels, I will make him go terra a terra, or in any ayre whatsoever most perfectly, or any thing that his Forces will permit him to do; and therefore esteem Passenger above all things in the world for the Manage, and for raising the Horse in Pessadoes, his croup in, or D'une piste, or Byas, or his Head to the Wall; and for pulling him back, and raising of him. For these rare things will not fail to make a Ready-horse, if they be applied rightly.



A general Rule.

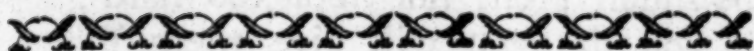
WHatsoever leads, Fore-parts, or Hinder-parts; that which still leads, tends to the center, and the other parts of the Horse flie the center: For it is a general Rule, and true; that whatsoever is the greater Circle, before or behind,

S

hind,

hind, that which is the greatest Circle, is most wrought; for it goes most Ground, and is at Liberty, whether it tends to the center, or from it; and the less Circle, most subjected, and prest: For, his Head to the Pillar (the Pillar on the outside of his Head) his Fore-parts lead, and therefore tend to the center, and his Hinder-parts flie the center; yet his Hinder-parts are most wrought, because it is the greater Circle, and therefore his Fore-parts more subjected, and upon them, which is upon the Shoulders; so the Horse's Croup to the Pillar, the Pillar on the inside of his Croup, his Croup in, his Fore-parts lead, and therefore tend to the center, and his Croup flies the center; but his Fore parts are more wrought, because it is the larger Circle; and his Hinder-parts more subjected and prest, because it is the narrower circle; and so upon the Hanches: so in his length the same; and upon Passager, he laps his Legs over but every second time, because they are cross, and upon the Action of a Trot.

More



More Observations.

IF a Horse goes forward too much; pull him back; if he goes back, put him forward; if he goes Side-ways on the Right-hand, put him Side-ways on the Left-hand; if he goes Side-ways on the Left-hand, put him side-ways on the Right-hand. If he puts out his Croup, put it in; if he puts in his Croup, put it out. If he goes on the Shoulders, stop him, and pull him back; if he goes on the Hanches, continue him so; if he rises when you would not have him, keep him down. All this upon a Walk; for thus he must attend both your Hand and your Heel, and follow your Will, and so of Necessity must obey you, because thus he is put from his Will, to Yours. And this must make him a perfect Horse; it is a most excellent Lesson.

Never put a Horse upon any Ayre, nor press him much, until you find him very sensible, and obedient, both to your Hand, and to your Heel; and extreamly supple: But young Horses must never

be much prest, nor stopt too hard ; for if you do, you will give them such a crick, and taint in their Back, as they will never recover it.

The Horse's-head to the Pillar, (or an imaginary center) the Pillar without his Head ; and the Horse's-croup to the Pillar, the Pillar on the inside of his Croup. And thus the Horse shall never be entier.

I never work a Horse's-head to the Pillar, (Leg and Rein contrary ;) because his inward Hinder-leg goes so much before his Shoulder, which is false ; but Leg and Rein on a Side, as I shewed you before.

To work a Horse upon Quarters, is to no purpose ; for, it confounds a Horse more, than a whole Circle ; but upon Demi-voltoes, or half Turns, is very good sometimes.

To put a Horse Byas on one Hand, and then put him forward ; and then put him Byas on the other Hand, and then put him forward ; and so from Hand to Hand ; and forward, makes him attend, and obey both the Hand, and the Heel, and is an excellent Lesson : But, as you put him Byas, his Fore-
parts

parts must always go before his hinder-parts.

There is no Lesson comparable to Passenger, his Croup in, to make him obey the Hand, and the Heel; and to raise him in Pessadoes, and Passenger him again, still raising and Passenger; and if you find he is not upon the Hanches, then Walk, or Trot him upon large Circles, and stop him hard, and raise him. All these Lessons are upon a Walk, and Passenger; therefore you may see what a rare thing Walking, and Passenger is, to make, and dress all Horses perfectly.

Nay, when a Horse is a perfect drest Horse, you must not make him go above once a Week at the most, but work him every Day upon his Trot, Gallop, Passenger, Raising of him, and Tuning of him thus, and with the Cavezone, he will go rarely, when you would make him go upon any ayre, or terra a terra. I say, a Horse is thus to be tuned; for, a Horse having four Legs, is like a Fiddle of four Strings; and if a Fiddle be not tuned the Musician can never play Salengers Round upon it: So, if a Horse's-legs be not rightly tuned, he will never dance his Round right.

Again, if you always play upon a Fiddle, though well tuned at the first, it will soon be out of tune by continual playing on it; so a Ready-horse, if you make him go perpetually, he will be soon out of tune; and therefore you must tune him still, as I have told you.



The just and exact Way for terra a terra.

TO go upon a square for terra a terra, is good, but not the best Way; for it constrains a Horse too much: so that he cannot go with that Freedom that he should; and is in great danger, that his inward Hinder-leg will go before his Shoulder, and then it would be very false: therefore the true, easy, and best Way is this that follows.

You must sit straight in the Saddle, the poise on the outward Stirrup, but not to lean down upon it too much; but only the outward Leg is to be a little longer than the inward Leg; and the inward Leg to be a little before it, but very little; and sit you must all upon the Twist, and Stirrups, and as forward to the Pommel as you can; the outward Leg

Leg close to the Horse, and the Knee turned inwards, and stiff in the Ham, to bring the Calf of the Leg to the Horse. Then for the Bridle-hand; on the Right-hand put your Hand on the outside of his Neck, or turn the Knuckles towards his Neck, pulling your little Finger up straight without turning your Hand, which pulls the inward Rein lying above your little Finger, your Arm a little from your Body oblique, your left Shoulder coming a little in, and your Neck behind, removed a little on the Left-side, and your Buttons a little on the Right-side: This makes the Horse necessarily to go Byas. But now I must tell you where you must look, or turn your Head; which must be on the inside of the Turn, to the inside of the Horse's-head, which keeps your Hand steady; for did you look to your inward Shoulder, it would remove your Bridle-hand too much within the Turn; and did you look just between the Horse's-ears, your outward Shoulder would not come in enough; and neither it, nor you, nor the Horse would be oblique; your Hand must go circularly with the Horse, and steadily; and but to feel him.

Thus

Thus the Horse being Byas, the inward Rein pull'd thus, enlarges the Horse before, in pulling his inward Fore-leg, from the outward Fore-leg ; which puts his inward Hinder-leg to his outward Hinder-leg, which narrows him behind, makes him bow in the Gambrels, especially on his outward Hinder-leg, which he rests on, and thrusts his inward hinder-leg under his Belly ; which (with all these things) makes him very much upon the Hanches ; the Horse is prest on the outside, and therefore of Necessity must look within the Turn, and his Fore-parts being enlarged, must embrace the Turn the better ; his Hinder-legs being within the Lines of his Fore-legs, he must needs be upon the Hanches ; and his inward Fore-leg being pull'd from his outward Fore-leg, (being circular) his inward Fore-leg of Necessity must be longer than his outward Fore-leg to lead, which is right, and so makes the largest circle ; and his outward Fore-leg the second Circle ; and his inward Hinder-leg the third Circle ; because it is thrust so much before his outward Hinder-leg, and under his Belly ; and his outward Hinder-leg makes the fourth and least Circle, because he rests

so much upon it, and bows in the Gambrels. Thus the Horse makes four perfect Circles, about the Pillar, or center, as I have told you, and given you the Reasons of it.

Thus doth the Horse's Fore-parts go always before his Hinder-parts ; that is, half his Shoulders within the Turn, before his half Croup within the Turn ; which is his Fore-leg within the Turn, before his Hinder-leg within the Turn : And thus the Horse can never go false, but most exactly true, with Head, Neck, Body, Legs, and all.

For the Left-hand, every thing must be as for the right, and the same way, changing Hand, Body, and Leg ; only for the Bridle-hand, it is necessary, that when you go on the Left-hand, you should put your Hand on the contrary side of his Neck ; your Arm close to your Body, and the Knuckles of your Bridle-hand turned towards his Neck, which pulls the inward Rein for the Left-hand ; because that Rein lies under your little Finger ; and this makes you oblique, and the Horse oblique : And every thing for the Left-hand works as truly, in all those several things, as I told you for the Right-hand.

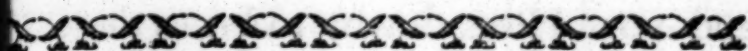
And

And thus the Horse is within your Hand, and your Heel ; and so you drive him, and make him go as you list ; slower, or faster ; higher, or lower : But remember, that your Hand be not too high, but that the Horse may go low, and prest ; for if your Hand be low, the Horse goes low ; and if your Hand be high, the Horse goes high : For the Horse always goes according to the heighth of the Hand ; and terra a terra should always be low, and prest.

Now I must tell you, that the inward Rein presses the Horse on the outside, weighs him up, and puts him upon the Hanches, especially on his outward Hinder-leg, so that all his Body leans on the outside, and he cannot bring in his outward Shoulder ; for it is bound up, and his Legs within the Turn to lead : You may know by his Neck, whether he leans on the outside or no ; for if he does, his Neck will lean all on the outside, and your Body must be concave on the outside, and convex within ; for being concave on the outside, makes the Horse so, and puts in his Hanch, (being prest on the outside) and hath three Legs in the ayre, his two Fore-legs, and his inward Hinder-leg, with a leap forward

low,

low, and prest. And this is most exactly the Truth for terra a terra, and all the delicate and subtil Helps that can be for it in the World.



Of Changing upon terra a terra.

Your Body is to be oblique, your Knuckles towards his Neck, and on the outside of his Neck, on which Hand soever you go ; and as he is going terra a terra on the Right-hand, let his Shoulders come in a little before you change him, and then help him with your Right-leg, and hold him up with your Hand, and on the outside of his Neck, which is now changed to the Left-side. Why his Shoulders are to come in, a little before you change him, is, to fix his Croup that it should not go out ; and so the Hand on the contrary side of the Turn, for the same Reason ; and put him always a little forward upon every change.

Now you are on the Left-hand, before you change him, let his Shoulders come in a little to fix his Croup, and then help him with the Left-leg, and put him forward a little, and then hold him

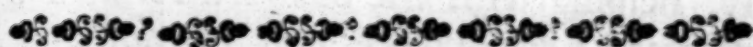
him up with your Hand, and on the outside of his Neck, on the Left-side, I begin with my Leg to change him, for the same Reasons I told you: But you must remember, to be stiff in the Hams, and your Heels down, to bring the Calf of the Legs to him; and the same for Demi-voltoes. And this is exactly the Truth for changing upon terra a terra.



Of Changing upon Demi-voltoes, terra a terra.

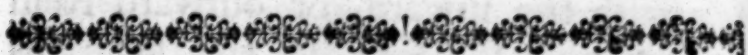
UPon Demi-voltoes, your Hand on the outside, your outward Leg close to him, you sit oblique, the Knuckles of your Bridle-hand towards his Neck; and when he makes his Demi-voltoe, let him go a little more than half a Turn, to fix his Croup before you change him; and when you do change him, help him with the inward Leg first, and then hold him up with your hand, and a little on the outside of his Neck: This from the Wall is best, but by a Wall it cannot be; for you cannot go through the Wall, and therefore by a Wall it can be but a just Half-turn, or
Demi-

Demi-voltée, which you may either help with the inward, or outward Rein at your own Pleasure, so you keep his Croup to the Wall, that he may keep the Line, and not falsify the Demi-voltée. This may be done with either Rein, so it be done with Art, and Skill, like a great Master ; for otherwise nothing is right in the Mannage.



Of gallopping, and changing en soldat.

With the outward Rein, and the outward leg, put him always forward ; if his Croup goes out too much, then your Bridle on the outside of the Turn, or of his Neck, to help with the inward Rein, too keep in his Croup, otherwise not, but help with the outward Rein, and outward Leg. Thus much for changing upon Circles D'une piste, which must always be either half a Turn, or a quarter of a Turn, terra a terra.



To prepare a Horse for Pessades.

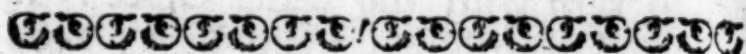
First walk him fore-right, either by a Wall, Hedge, or otherwise, and at the end stop him, and raise him two or three Pessades, and then turn him gently, helping with the outward Rein, and outward Leg, and see that he doth not falsify his Demi-voltoe, upon Passager, either in his Shoulders, or his Croup; but both to be just, when he is turned.

Do as much on the other Hand, and then Trot him upon the straight Line; stop him, advance him and turn him as you did before; and when he is perfect in this, then Gallop him Le petit Gallop, upon the straight Line; stop him, advance him: But now let him go a Demi-voltoe upon his ayre, and when he is perfect in this, then let him make a Pas-sado, upon Le petit Gallop, without stopping or advancing, which he will do perfectly; but you must put his Head a little from the Wall, that his Croup may be to the Wall, to keep the Line, that he may not falsify his Demi-voltoe; and before he turns, to make two or three

Falcadoes

Falcadoes, to firm his Hanches the better, to turn with the better Grace: If you would run him a toute Bride, keep his Head a little from the Wall, to keep his Croup to it, slacking the Reins a little, and pressing him with your Legs, and to make two or three little Falcadoes before you turn him, and then close him with your outward Rein, and outward Leg, for the Demi-voltœ: and so on the other Hand the same for the Passadœ, some five times the Horse's Length. And thus the Horse will go perfectly in Pessades, which is the Touch-stone of a Ready-horse, obeying Hand and Heel in every thing.

If your Horse go in Corvets, or a Demi-ayre, then make his Demi-voltœs upon his Pessades, upon his ayre, which is very graceful. The *French* calls this Pessade, Releve; which methinks, is not a proper Term for it: A Demi-voltœ must be helpt in all kinds like terra a terra, for 'tis but a half a Turn terra a terra; that is, the inward Rein, and outward Leg, and your Body, and every thing like terra a terra.

*Of the Piroyte.*

THe Action of the Horse's Legs in the Piroyte, is very strange; your Hand on the outside of his Neck to look into the Turn, and working violently with the outward Rein of the Bridle, straightens his fore-parts, and puts his hinder-parts at more Liberty, helping with no Leg; so the Action of his Legs are thus: On the Right-hand, when he lifts up both his Fore-legs at the same time, he lifts up his hinder-leg without the Turn; so he hath three Legs up at a time, and rests only on the inward hinder-leg; and when those three Legs come to the Ground, his outward Shoulder coming in so fast, his inward hinder-leg removes at the same time almost in a Place, to keep the Circle; and I say, that at the same time those three Legs are set down, his inward hinder-leg removes, to go along with the Circle; but in a manner in a Place: So that indeed the inward hinder-leg is the center, though it removes in the Place round; and when the Horse is so dizzy as he can

go no longer, (for fear of falling) then he sets his inward hinder-leg forward, to stop himself.

These are exactly the helps, and the motions of the Horse's Legs in the Piroyte, or else he could not go so swiftly as he ought: He is upon the Shoulders, because he is prest on the inside; so is a Pessadœ, being but half a Piroyte, because both of them is helpt with the outward Rein.



One of the greatest Secrets in the Mannage that ever I found out.

THe inward hinder-leg to the Turn always put out a little, is in all things the Quintessence of the Mannage, whether his Croup out, or in; the Knuckles of the Bridle-hand towards his Neck, his Croup in, doth well in terra a terra; and always your Horse to go Byas, upon his Voltoes, or his head to the Wall, doth it best; for his Shoulders going before, his hinder-parts put out his inward hinder-leg, which is the greatest Business in the Mannage; for so his hinder-legs

are near together, and so upon the Hanches.

The inward Rein of the Bridle doth it, pull'd, as I have told you, and so doth the inward Rein of the Cavezone; for it puts out his inward hinder-leg, narrows him behind, and enlarges him before; because it pulls his inward fore-leg from his outward fore-leg, and therefore enlarges him before; and at the same time, it puts his inward hinder-leg out, to his outward hinder-leg; and therefore narrows him behind, and so must of Necessity be upon the Hanches.

And thus his inward fore-leg must always be before his inward hinder-leg, so that half his Shoulders goes always before half his Croup, by which means he can never go false; and his fore-parts always embracing the Turn the better, and the outward hinder-leg being kept in a little, with your outward Leg, makes his two hinder-legs within the Lines of his fore-legs, which makes him upon the Hanches, and his fore-parts to lead, as Horses always should do: For they do not travel with their Arses first, but with their heads, and fore-parts.

Remember, that no Horse can be upon the Hanches, but those that bend in the

the Gambrels, and bow there ; and the more their hinder-legs go under their Belly, the more they bow in the Gambrels. Remember also as a certain Truth, that no Horse can be upon the Hanches, except his Croup, or Buttock, be thrust out backwards : As for example ; when you give a Horse a good stop, his hinder-legs go under his Belly, and his Croup, or Buttocks, are thrust out ; he bows in the Gambrels, and so is upon the Hanches : When he goes le petit Gallop, his Croup in, his hinder-legs are thrust under his Belly, then his Croup goes out ; he bows in the Gambrels, and is upon the Hanches : So in terra a terra, his hinder-legs are thrust under his Belly, and his Croup goes out ; he bows in the Gambrels, and is upon the Hanches.

When you pull a Horse back, one of his hinder-legs goes always under his Belly ; he puts out his Croup, bends in the Gambrels, and is upon the Hanches : So in Pessades his Croup is thrust out, he bows in the Gambrels, and is upon the Hanches ; but if he be raised too high, it puts him off of the Hanches, for then he is stiff in the Gambrels, because his Croup goes in ; which puts him upon the hand, but off of the Hanches :
Therefore

Therefore you must never raise him too high in Pessades ; if his Croup must go out, be bow'd in the Gambrels, and so be upon the Hanches.

My way, at the single Pillar in Corvets, puts out his Croup, makes him bow in the Gambrels, and so to be upon the Hanches, because he cannot rise high, and therefore puts out his Croup, and is upon the Hanches ; so all that puts a Horse upon the Hanches, is before, either with the Cavezone's Rein, or Bitt, and nothing behind.

The inward hinder-leg, and inward Cavezone's Rein, is the Quintessence of the Mannage, with thrusting his Croup out, which makes him bow in the Gambrels, and so be upon the Hanches ; which is the end of all our Work and Business in the Mannage. I do not mean his Croup to be put out in a Circle, or put out upon a straight Line ; but be thrust out backwards, and then he is upon the Hanches, because he bows in the Gambrels.

I must remember you again, that to put him on the Hanches, is all before ; so that when his head is pull'd down, and in, then he is upon the Hanches ; for his Croup goes out, and he bows in the
Gambrels,

Gambrels, and therefore is upon the Hanches : That is, the Horse must be a little higher behind than before ; for when his Croup goes out, and he bows in the Gambrels, and therefore is upon the Hanches. As for example ; a Horse goes down a Hill, then his Croup is higher than his fore-parts, and his Croup goes out, and then he bows in the Gambrels, and is extreamly upon the Hanches.

So if he be turned in the Stable, his Croup is higher than his fore-parts, and puts his Croup out, bends in the Gambrels, and therefore is very much upon the Hanches. So in plain Ground, where there is no Hills, you must supply it, with pulling his head down, and as much as you can, to make him higher behind, than before, which puts out his Croup, makes him bow in the Gambrels, and puts him upon the Hanches ; as stopping of him, pulling back, Passager, le petit Gallop, and terra a terra : All these pulls him down, and puts out his Croup, which puts him upon the Hanches.

If the inward Cavezone's Rein be tied to the Pommel, or pull'd hard in your hand, it puts him upon the Hanches, because it puts his inward hinder-leg out to his

his outward hinder-leg, that it shall not come in too much, nor at all ; and that puts him upon the Hanches ; so in Pessades, or Corvets, the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Pommel, puts the inward Leg out, which puts him upon the Hanches, because it thrusts his Croup out : But when you have nothing but the Bridle, what then ? Then the inward Rein of the Bridle doth the same in all things ; but Passager his Croup in, is with the outward Rein, because it is the Action of a Trot, which is cross, and so it will suffer it, because his Legs are By- as ; so it is right for Passager, to be prest within the Turn, and at Liberty without the Turn, or else his outward Legs could not lap over his inward Legs : But if you have nothing but the Bridle, he will look out of the Turn, if you do not help with both Reins ; but whensoever you raise him in Pessades, his croup in, or out, you must help with the inward Rein, to put out his inward hinder-leg, which makes him bow in the Gambrels, because his hinder-legs are made like our Arms, and therefore must bow in the Gambrels, if it be thrust out.

But I must tell you for a great Truth, That whensoever, upon large circles
D'une

D'une piste, the Horse's inward hinder-leg is put out, and bows, it puts him not upon the Hanches, but very much upon the Shoulders; for the more his Buttock doth go out, the more still he is upon the Shoulders; for that Lesson is not to put him upon the Hanches, but to supple his Shoulders; for if you would put him upon the Hanches, you must put in his croup; for the larger circle is wrought most, because it goes the most Ground; yet his hinder-parts are the most prest, because in the narrower circle, and therefore upon the Hanches.

Some are of opinion, that the more you put in his croup, the more he is on the Hanches; which I do not think, because his inward hinder-leg goes before half his Shoulder, and so he is wide behind, and off of the Hanches, and goes backward: But if his croup be in, and you put out his inward hinder-leg, then he bows in the Gambrels, his hinder-legs narrow behind, and so upon the Hanches; and the more upon the Hanches, if the Horse goes Byas, because by that means the Horse's hinder-legs are nearer together, and so narrower, and therefore upon the Hanches; and this is most true: For if the Horse's hinder-leg (within the Turn)

Turn) goes before his inward fore-leg, he doth not only go backward, but his inward hinder-leg is stiff in the Gambrels, and therefore not upon the Hanches; but when you put out his inward hinder-leg, then he bows in the Gambrels, and therefore upon the Hanches, because his hinder-legs are made like our Arms; only he hath a joint more, which is the stiffling-joint.

You see plainly, now, what an excellent, and most rare thing it is, to keep a Horse's inward hinder-leg out in all manner of things that are in the Mannage; and in whatsoever you work him, him, it is the absolute Quintessence of the Mannage; and without it is nothing right, but most false, because of abundance of irreparable Errors; whereas with it all things are right, and most true.

This hath been studied to the Purpose and no Horse but is perfectly made with it, and all is to put his inward hinder-leg out in all things; and being put out thus he must bow in the Gambrels, because his hinder-legs are made like our Arms. And this is that which none either know or have thought of; and therefore mark it, remember it, and practise it if you can.

can ; and if you cannot, do not find fault with a thing, because you cannot do it : For, certainly no Man is born to all Professions, by Inspiration, but with great Study, Diligence, Care, Patience, and long Practice : No Man being born with so supream a Wit above others, as to do (assoon as he sees it) any thing that hath been so many Years another Man's Study.



To put a Horse upon the Hanches : On which I insist the more, because it is the End of all our Work and Labour in the Mannage ; for without it, no Horse can possibly go well.

A Horse can never go well upon the Hanches, but his fore-parts must be wrought ; for, in that manner, when you stop him, you pull his fore-parts, and that puts him upon the Hanches, because you pull his fore-parts down, and in : When you pull him back, you put him upon the Hanches, because you pull his fore-parts down and in ; When you make him go terra a terra ; when you work the inward Rein, on which

U

hand

hand soever he goes, so you press him on the outside, and put in his outward Hanch, then you put him upon the Hanches, because you pull him down on the outside, with the inward Rein of the Bridle, on either hand.

So (my way) with the Cavezone tied to the Pommel, or tied to the Girths, if he be prest on the outside, and his outward Hanch put in, puts him upon the Hanches, because the Cavezone pulls down his Head, and in. And believe me, the Cavezone thus, puts him more on the Hanches, than any thing ; but if you press him on the inside of the Turn, (though you do pull down his Head) he is off of the Hanches, because his outward Hanch goes out, and therefore puts him on the Shoulders.

You see then, that whatsoever pulls a Horse-head down, and in, puts him upon the Hanches ; or that naturally he puts his Head down. As for Example ; a Horse that goes Incaputiato, which is, to arm himself against the Bitt, is easily put upon the Hanches ; and being upon the Hanches, he is light of the Hand.

To strike a Horse on the Knees with your Rod, when he rises before, pulls him down, and in, and therefore puts him

him upon the Hanches. There is no Horse that holds up his Head, but he is off of the Hanches; nor any Horse that rises high before, but is off of the Hanches; nor any Horse in terra a terra, when his Head is pull'd down, and in, but goes on the Hanches, if he be rid as he ought to be. The Reason is this; no Horse can go on the Hanches, that doth not bow in the Gambrels, or hinder-houghs: Whensoever a Horse rises high before, he is stiff in the Gambrels of Necessity, and therefore off of the Hanches; nor doth a Horse hold up his Head very high, but it stiffens his Gambrels, and therefore off of the Hanches; nor can any Horse go low before, but of Necessity he must bend in the Gambrels, either going down a Hill, or turn'd in the Stable, which makes his hinder-parts higher than his fore-parts; but he must bend in the Gambrels, and therefore must be upon the Hanches, and so his Croup in: But if his Croup be out, he is upon the Shoulders, though his Head be down.

So many Horses (as also hunting and travelling Geldings) go horribly upon the Shoulders, though their Heads be down; but indeed they are all upon the Shoulders

except in the Mannage. For Example ; A Horse's fore-legs are made like our Legs, the Knees outward ; but a Horse's hinder-legs are made like our Arms, just contrary : So that whensoever a Horse is raised high before, it stiffens him in the Gambrels ; and when he holds up his Head, it stiffens him in the Gambrels. So on the contrary, whensoever his Head is pull'd down, of Necessity he must bend in the Gambrels ; for he cannot do otherwise, if he be prest, otherwise not.

I labour this Point the more, because you shall clearly see what puts him on the Hanches, and what puts him off of the Hanches ; that so you may shun the one, and take the other, which is, to put him on the Hanches, because that is the End of all our Labour, and the Quintessence of our Art ; for, without a Horse be upon the Hanches, he can never be a ready-horse, or light on the Hand ; but there is no Rule without an Exception, and that is, you may pull down a Horse's Head, and yet not upon the Hanches ; which is, when you work his Shoulders D'une piste, Leg and Rein on the inside, though his Head be pull'd down, he cannot be on the Hanches, because you put it out, and prest him

on

on the inside : No more when his Croup is in, if he be prest on the inside, his Croup goes out a little, and therefore cannot be upon the Hanches, though his Head be pull'd down, because you put his Hanch out : This is good to give him an apuy upon the Bars, and supple his Shoulders ; but it cannot put him on that which you put away, that were too great a Miracle, indeed an impossibility.

Pulling down his Head, and in, puts him upon the Hanches, at a Stop ; and pulling down his Head, and in, when you make him go back, puts him upon the Hanches : and when you pull down his Head and in, and raise him, it puts him upon the Hanches ; and when you press him on the outside of the Turn in terra a terra, it puts him upon the Hanches ; when you pull down his Head and in, either with the Cavezone, or the Bridle ; and so pulling down his Head, and in, pressing him on the outside of the Turn, puts him upon the Hanches in terra a terra, or upon his Walk in Passager : And this (I am sure) is sufficient to put a Horse upon the Hanches, which is the Elixir of the Mannage, and is done when his Head is down, and in, and prest ; that is, when you pull down

his Head, that you press him with the Heels, or Legs, otherwise not ; for, if a Horse holds down his Head to drink, he is not on the Hanches, for then he bows rather before, than behind, and is on the Shoulders ; therefore he must be prest ; so if he holds up his Head, it works nothing on the Hanches, but the contrary.

A short Trot puts a Horse upon the Hanches, so a short Trot D'une piste, Leg and Rein on a side, puts a Horse upon the Hanches, because his inward hinder-leg is put out ; his Head to the Wall puts him upon the Hanches ; and nothing puts him more on the Hanches than a light Hand ; for when he hath nothing to rest on before, then he will rest behind, which is upon the Hanches.

There are many Reasons why we work a Horse so much, to put him upon the Hanches, which I have shewed you before ; but there is one Reason more, and that is this : A Horse's Croup, or Hanches, bears nothing but his Tail, which is very light ; but his Shoulders hath his Neck and Head to bear, which is more ; and therefore we put him upon the Hanches, to poise him, and to relieve

lieve his Shoulders, and to make him
light on the Hand.

*Thus much for dressing all manner of
Horses upon the Ground, to make
them obey perfectly both Hand and
Heel, and to put them upon the Han-
ches, which is the master-piece of our
Art.*

Here Ends the Second Part.

THE



THE
THIRD PART,
FOR

Dressing and making of Horses in all several Ayres, my new way.

YOU must in all Ayres follow the Strength, Spirit, and Disposition of the Horse, and do nothing against Nature; for Art is but to set Nature in Order, and nothing else: But to make a Horse Gallop and Change, and to go terra a terra, is for the most part forced; and in Pessades the like: For, if a Horse be impatient, he will hardly go well in Pessades.

No other Ayres are to be forced, but every Horse is to chuse his own Ayre, unto which Nature hath most fitted him, which you may easily see, when he is tied short to the single Pillar my Way.

For

For Corvets, a Horse ought to have a great deal of Patience : And the Ayre of Corvets gives a Horse Patience with discreet Riding, (as they say) but I have seldom seen that discreet Riding ; I doubt there is a Mistake in it, which is this : First the Horse hath Patience, and then that Horse goes in Corvets ; but seldom impatient Horses are made patient by Corvets : So seeing most Horses that go well in Corvets, to have Patience, they think Corvets gives them Patience, when it is Patience that gives them Corvets. But there is no Rule without an Exception, yet I doubt I am in the right ; for, though some young Horse may (by chance) go in Corvets, yet I assure you, for the most part, Horses must have a great deal of time, with the custom of often Repetitions ; to be in some Years, and to have gray-hairs in their Beard, before they will be settled, and firm'd, to go certainly in Corvets, both forwards, and upon their Voltoes ; therefore it is an Error in those that think they can force Corvets, if the Horse's inclination be not to go in that Ayre ; for I have known many Horses, that all the Force in the world would never make go in Corvets ; their Disposition being against it : Corvets

vets is an Ayre, built only of Art: for if the Horse be not perfectly in the Hanches and the Heels, and upon the Hanches he will never go in Corvets: Yet I must tell you, this new way of mine will make Horses go in Corvets, which by any other way would have been brought to it, and it seldom or never fails me.

For leaping Horses, there are four several Ayres, which are Croupadoes, Balotadoes, Capriols, and a Pace and a Leap; the height of these may be all alike, but not the Manner; though the Horse that goes the longest time, must needs go the highest.

Croupadoes is a Leap, where the Horse pulls up his hinder-legs, as if he drew, or pull'd them up into his Body.

Balotadoes is a Leap where the Horse offers to strike out with his hinder-legs, but doth not; and makes only an offer, or half Strokes; shewing only the Shoes of his hinder-legs, but doth not strike, only makes an offer, and no more.

Capriols is a Leap, that when the Horse is at the full height of his Leap, he yerks, or strikes out his hinder-legs, as near, and as even together, and as far out as ever he can stretch them; which

the French call, Nouer l'Esquillette, which is, to tie the point.

A Pace and a Leap, is, as it were three Ayres; the Pace terra a terra, the rising of him a Corvet, and then a Leap: These Ayres can never be forc'd to go well in them, in spite of their pinsons, but what Nature ordains them; for, they are called, well-disposed Horses.

What belongs to leaping Horses (according to the old Opinion) are these things: A Horse of huge and vast strength, an excellent Mouth, perfect good Feet; in which last they have not erred amiss, for good Feet are very requisite, else the Horse dares never light on them, for fear of hurting them (no more than a Man that hath the Gout, dares Leap) and so will never rise.

I could wish a good Mouth, (which is a good Apuy) neither too hard, nor too soft, but to suffer a good Apuy upon the Bars, and so to suffer the curb, which is to be understood a good Mouth: yet I must tell you, the rarest leaping Horse that ever I saw, or rid, went not at all upon the curb, but only upon the Bars of his Mouth, which I do not commend; but it is better to have him Leap so,

so, being so rare a Horse, than to be so over-curious as not to have him Leap at all, because he went not upon the curb.

That they must be very strong Horses to be leaping Horses, is a very great Error; for, it is not the strongest Horses that is fittest for the delight of the Man-
nage, and especially not for leaping Horses; for I have seen many strong Horses, that must be galloped very long before you could abate the strength of their chines; and all that while they would do nothing but yerk, and fetch disordered counter times of false Leaps, and the best Horse-men in the world could never make them leaping Horses: So it is not strong, but well-disposed Horses; for the best leaping Horses that ever I knew, were the weakest Horses I have seen.

Take one of the guard, the strongest Fellow that is, and I will bring a little Fellow that shall out-leap him many a Foot; yet that strong Fellow would crush that little Fellow to Death in his Arms: So 'tis not Strength, but Disposition fits Horses for Leaping. But some will say, that a little Man's Strength is above his Weight, and the great Man's Weight is above his strength; but that

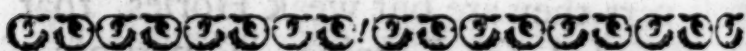
is

is not so; for the great Man's Strength shall be more above his Weight, than the little Man's Strength above his, and yet the little Man shall out-leap him. Nay, two little Men of equal Strength, the one shall leap excellently, and the other not; and more, a Weaker little man shall out-leap the Stronger, and sometimes a weak slender slim Fellow will out-leap a knit strong Fellow; so that it is nothing but Disposition, which Nature gives, and not Art: Sometimes a strong great Fellow will out-leap a little Man, but that is seldom, because their Spirits are more dilated, asunder, and diffused, than in little men: The like I will assure you in Horses, as I have told you of men; there may be a strong Horse disposed for Leaping, and that no doubt is an excellent Horse; but for the most part they are but weak Horses, that are disposed for Leaping; sometimes a Horse finds himself so pincht with Corvets upon the Hanches, being weak, that he finds ease in Leaping.

Thus you see, that Leaping Horses are disposed by Nature, and not Art, being full of Spirit, and Light; so that Horse-men hath nothing to do in making Leaping Horses, but only to give them

the time, which is all the Art ought to be used to a leaping Horse ; and he that thinks to shew more Art in a leaping Horse, will but shew his Ignorance and Folly.

A Pace and a Leap is an Ayre, in which Horses commonly go when they have not a good Apuy ; for the Pace puts him upon the hand, and gives him a Rise to leap like one that runs before he leaps, and so may leap higher than he that goes every time a Leap. Thus I have shewed you these Ayres, Corvets, Croupadoes, Balotadoes, Capriols, and a Pace, and a Leap, which Nature must do more than Art : Two Paces, and three Paces, and a Leap, are not comely, and are indeed rather a Gallop Galliard, than can be called an Ayre.



My New Way at the single Pillar, which is most effectual and operative for the Dressing of all Horses in all Ayres whatsoever.

First bring the Horse saddled, and bridled, and put him under the Button, and then let a Groom take the inward
Cavezone's

Cavezone's Rein for the right-hand, and lap it about the single Pillar, and make it very short, (but where he holds it higher than where 'tis tied to the Ring of the Cavezone) and let another Groom hold the long Rein of the Cavezone on the other side, in his hand, with a Poinson in the other hand, to prick him if he should put out his Croup too much; and one behind him with a Rod, to keep him from going backwards; and then let the Cavalarizzo raise him *De firme a firme*, which is in a place: A little at first must satisfy you, for, *Rome* was not built in a Day. Thus tying him short, he cannot rise high, and therefore to find his Ease, he goes upon the Hanches; for he is forced to it: After he is used so a little, two Rods is the best help, one upon the Shoulder, and the other under his Belly, which puts him upon the Hanches.

Tie him so still with the same Rein, and when he is perfect *De firme a firme*, then make him go upon his Voltoes with two Rods in your hands, helping before with one Rod, and the other under his Belly; and be you on the outside of the Horse, and he will go upon his Voltoes perfectly.

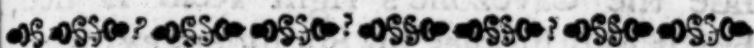
Tie him so still with the same Rein, and help him with both your Rods as before, and be on the outside of him, and then go forwards, and face the Horse, and he will go in Corvets upon his Voltoes backwards perfectly ; which I never saw but this Way.

Tie him with the same Rein still, and you may make him go side-ways in Corvets.

Now tie the left Rein (as you did the right) short, which doth the Business; and do in all things as I told you for the right-hand ; and thus the Horse goes perfectly on both Hands, in Corvets in a Place, upon his Turns, backward upon his Voltoes, and side-ways, without any Body on him, which was never known or seen before.

When the Horse goes perfectly thus, then get upon him, the Rein still tied very short, and make him go as you did before in every thing, and you may make him go in all other Ayres the same Way.

How



How to dress a Horse perfectly in Corvets without Pillar, which is the surest Way.

WHen you work a Horse upon Corvets, before you do that, you must make a Horse to rise perfectly in Pessades, which is high before, and to stay upon the hand, using the Cavezone still; and this forward, and not upon Circles at the first by any means: Then to make him go in Corvets, tie the Cavezone's Rein from the Wall, to keep that hinder-leg to his other hinder-leg that is next the Wall, and begin with two or three Corvets, and then walk him again, and then corvet him again; and if you feel him on the hand, and he goes forwards with it, he will quickly be dressed; and if he goes forwards too much, let him make his Corvets in a place, and pull him back, and then make him go in Corvets.

When your left Shoulder is to the Wall, you must tie the right Cavezone's Rein to the Pommel, which doth not only keep back his hinder-leg on the same

side the Cavezone's right Rein is tied, but it also supples his Shoulders extreamly, and prepares him ; nothing like it to go upon Voltoes on the right hand.

When your right Shoulder is to the Wall, then you must tie the left Cavezone's Rein to the Pommel, for the same Reasons, and work him in Corvets as I told you before ; and this will prepare him, and make him go upon his Voltoes on the left-hand ; and no Lesson better at the first.

There is another rare Lesson for Corvets, which is this ; tie the right Cavezone's Rein to the Pommel, and let him go on the left-hand, Leg and Rein on a Side, as if his head was to the Pillar ; and raise him so in Corvets, two or three times, his Croup out ; and then walk him, and then corvet him in the same Manner : This keeps out his inward hinder-leg, and so supples him to the Hand and Heel, that there is nothing like it ; but though he goes on the left-hand, he is suppled for the right-hand.

The left-hand is the same ; you must tie the left Cavezone's Rein to the Pommel, and go on the right-hand, his Croup out, and help Leg and Rein on a Side, and so do in all things else, as you did

did before ; and thus he shall never be entier, but most supple both to hand and Heel.

To put him upon Corvets on his Voltoes, the inward Cavezone's Rein must still be tied to the Pommel, and his croup must not be in too much ; but rather D'une piste, for teaching of him, and to keep out the inward hinder-leg is the Business ; help a little with the outward Rein of the Bridle, and make him go three or four Corvets, and then walk him, and then corvet him again ; and so diminish your Walk, and augment your Corvets, until he makes a perfect Turn in Corvets ; and when he is perfect, then let the Horse go upon his Voltoes byas in Corvets, and that's the Perfection in Voltoes : You must always (in Corvets) help with the outward Rein, not only to keep him up, but to give him the Ply, and to make him go Byas, and not help with your Legs at all.

If you find he hastens too much, then raise him high in Pessades, and keep him upon the hand, and help him with the Rod upon the Shoulders and Legs, to make him bend them ; which is the only Grace in all Ayres whatsoever : This, and thus working of him upon his Voltoes,
either

either D'une piste, or his croup in upon Pessades, will make him go rarely in Corvets.

To make a Horse go side-ways in Corvets, help only with the Bridle, and put his head to the Wall; and on the right-hand, help with the outward Rein, and let the Horse Byas; that is, his Shoulders before his Croup; and let him go three or four Corvets Byas, and then walk him Byas; and then corvet him Byas again, and so walk him, and corvet him; and by little and little diminish his Walking, and augment his Corvets until he goes all in Corvets, which he will soon do, and very perfectly.

For the left-hand, using the outward Rein, and the Horse being Byas, do in every thing, as I told you before for the right-hand; and the Horse will very soon go Byas, and very perfectly.

To make the Horse go in corvets backward, pull the Horse back, and then make him go three or four Corvets in a place, and then pull him back again, and then corvet him in a place again; and thus pulling him back, and corvetting him in a place, diminishing the pulling back, and augmenting the Corvets,

he

he will at last go backward in Corvets as perfectly as can be.

To go forwards in Corvets, you must always help with the Rein to the Wall ; to enlarge him before, and to narrow him behind ; because he leads with his fore-parts, and his hinder-parts follow to keep the Ground that his fore-parts hath got ; his fore-parts being at Liberty, and his hinder-parts prest.

To go backwarks in Corvets, you must always help with the Rein to the Wall ; to narrow him before, and enlarge him behind, to be there at Liberty, because he leads with his hinder-parts, and his fore-parts follow, to keep the Ground that his hinder-parts hath got ; his hinder-parts being at Liberty, and his fore-parts prest, your hand is to be low, that the Horse may not go too high, and your Body a little forward, to give his hinder-parts liberty to lead, and not help with the Legs at all, but with the hand every time to pull him back, as he falls to the Ground.

For side-ways in Corvets, you must help with the outward Rein and outward Leg ; that is, you must pull that Rein on which hand soever he goes, and your contrary Leg ; and that's right for side-ways.

Knowing

Knowing how to help him forwards, backwards, and of each side, in Corvets, put those together, and then you may make him do the cross when you please, without any Difficulty.

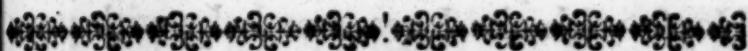
For the Saraban in Corvets, it must be with the outward Rein, which is to be pull'd first on one Side, and then on the other side, in every corvet, from side to side, helping only with your hand; your outward Shoulder following it, and not helping with your Legs at all.

All Ayres must be quick from the Ground, and are to stay upon the hand; that is, to soutenir, or hold him there, but it must be gently; a light, and a firm hand, helping every time.

If a Horse beats upon the hand, it is, because he doth not obey the Curb; and in that case, you must raise him very high in Pessades, and hold him there, which puts him upon the Curb; and if this will not do, then gallop him upon a straight Line by a Wall, or otherwise; and from his Gallop stay him upon the hand, and let him go in corvets; or let him gallop forward Le petit Gallop, and stop him, and then raise him three or four Pessades very high, and hold him on the hand when he is up, and this will

cure

cure him ; if not, then trot him, and stop him good hard stops ; and pull him back : And upon the same circles D'une piste, gallop him, and stop him, and pull him back, and this will settle him on the hand, I warrant you ; your Stirrups being of an equal Length, except one of your Legs was shorter than the other, and rather a hole shorter than too long ; but still that you may sit straight ; not so short as the *Italians*, or the *Spaniards*, but that you may sit upon your twist, and straight upon your stirrups.



The true way for Corvets.

THe seat is to be just as in terra a terra, but not so stiff, nor so oblique ; the bridle-hand even with his Neck, the Knuckles towards his Neck on which hand soever he goes ; but the hand still even with his Neck, two or three Fingers above the Pommel, and a little forward, and no help but soutenir, and in good time, according to the Horse's time ; for every Horse takes his own time.

Quick

Quick it must be from the Ground, and to stay in the Ayre upon the hand, your Body always going to that which comes to you; that is, to bend a little to him as he rises; but so insensibly, that the beholders cannot perceive it.

You are to sit as forward to the Pom-mel as you can, being straight, and your Thighs and Knees as close as if they were glued to the Saddle, but your Toes down, that you may be weak in the Hams; that is, to have your Nerves weak from the Knees down-wards, and strong from the Knees upwards, and not touch your Horse with the Legs, nor help with your Legs at all; but to leave his croup free to follow his fore-parts that lead.

For when the Horse is between the Pillars, or at the single Pillar my way, and no body on him, yet he goes as just as can be, and yet there is no Leg that helps him, therefore you must not help with your Legs at all; for, if you help with your outward Leg, he thinks he must go terra a terra; and if he doth go in corvets, he goes all awry, and leans on the outside; and if you help with the inward Leg, then he put out his croup, and leans all on the inside; and if you help with both your Legs, it presses him too much,

much, and makes him go too quick a time; therefore the right way is not to help with your Legs at all.

This is for a Horse that goes perfectly; but if a Horse puts in his croup too much, you must put it out with your inward Leg; and if he puts out his croup too much, then you must put it in with your outward Leg: But remember always, that your Horse goes Byas upon his circles, his fore-parts always to lead, which is oblique: And this is the exact way for corvets.



Of Corvets upon Voltoes, and to change upon them.

SIt straight, a little oblique; help not with the Legs at all, until you change; the Toes down to unbrace your Nerves, and your hand even with his Crest, or Neck, and only soutenir, and not help every time, in musical time, and according to the time of the Horse, for every Horse takes his own time; though all Ayres should be quick from the Ground, and to stay upon the hand, and help with the Rod in a just time, either
Y cross

cross his Neck, or on the inside, which you please, as you find occasion : And as the Horse is thus going upon his Voltoes in Corvets on the right-hand, when you would change him, put your right-leg gently to him, and then hold him up with your hand a little, on the inside of his Neck, the Knuckles always towards his Neck, on which hand soever you go; and as soon as he hath changed, then take your right-leg from him, as before, and help not with the Legs at all, only the poise is to be a little on the outside.

Now you are on the left-hand, when you would change again, put your left-leg gently to him, and your hand to hold him up a very little on the inside of the turn, and then take away your left-leg as before, and help not with the Legs at all. The reason why (upon his changes) I begin with the leg, and not the hand, is this: If I began with the hand, he would stop; and if I did turn my hand, his croup would go out, and be lost, and therefore I begin with the leg; but instantly I hold him up with my hand, when they are so near together, that none can perceive it: If his Shoulders do not come in enough, you must turn your hand, to help with the outward Rein.

And

And this must be done so neatly, and gently, and with so much art as possibly can be, which is the quintessence of changing upon Voltoes in Corvets: For Demi-voltoes in Corvets, the same way, and the same helps; and so for a Demi-ayre, the same helps.

A Horse that retains his forces, and is parestous, and towards resty, Corvets is an Ayre that will not agree well with him; and Horses of great fire, and fougue, that are impatient, are very improper for all Ayres, as Corvets, Demi-ayres, and Leaps; but they are more proper to go upon the Ground; for, as to furious Horses, and impatient, all Ayres augment their Collers, and deprive them of Memory and Obedience.

I would have the first Lesson in Corvets to be make leasurely, and high before, which is Pessades; for that (long time before he brings his fore-legs to the Ground) doth give him means to assure his Hanches, and to firm his Head, and to bend his Fore-legs, and to divert him from Apprehensions, and Unquietness, and to hinder him from trampling, which is Trepigner.



*Here I will shew you, how to dress leaping
Horses.*

WAlk a Horse forward, and then make him make one Leap, and presently raise him high; a Pessade, or two; and stay him, and keep him upon the Hand, and then augment your Leaps, and diminish your Pessades, and so by little and little he will leap perfectly; and after he is perfect upon a right Line forward, then you must put him upon Voltoes, or Circles, and continue the same Method; but the Circles must be a little large at first.

You must remember, when you raise him to Leap, that you help him with your Rod behind, either one Stroke, or more, as you please, so it be in time; and that is, when the Horse is raised, then help him, but always high Pessades after he hath leapt.

Remember to fit straight, your Stirrups a little shorter, a hole, or so; for too short would throw you out of the Saddle, and too long would disorder your Seat, and make you lose your Stirrups;
your

your Toes down, to slack your Nerves from the Knees downward, or else the Horse would bolt forward too much; for a leaping Horse should never go forward above a foot and a half at the most; and when you raise him, instantly put your Brest out, which makes your Shoulders go a little back (though insensibly) to the Beholders; for, did you not so when the Horse rises, it would be too late when he yerks behind, or raises his Croup.

Now I must tell you, that your Knees and Thighs must be as close as if they were glu'd to the Saddle; and for your bridle-hand, you must always help with it the outward Rein, to bring in his outward Shoulder, to narrow him before, and enlarge him behind, to press him on the inside of the turn, and to be at Liberty without the turn, that his Croup may go a little out, and be free; for else, how should he leap, if his Croup were subjected, or bound up? Therefore the outward Rein is to be used for all leaps whatsoever, either forward, or upon Circles.

Here I will tell you a secret for the Hand, concerning leaping Horses; and that is this: The Bridle being a little longer than ordinary, raise him well, and

every time put your Hand a little forward; to soutenir, and stay him there upon the Hand, as if he hung in the Ayre; and in every leap help him so, and take a just time, like a Ball at the bound.

All Leaps are made upon the Hand, and nothing else; therefore see that the Horse be well settled upon the Hand, before ever you make him leap; for nothing disorders a Horse's Mouth more than leaps: For, a pace and a leap, it must be done the same way.

Thus ends the Method for teaching leaping Horses.

A true Observation in Riding.

THere is no man, that hath not a musical Head, that can be a good Horse-man, because all Horses ought to go in a just and musical time, though the time varies in every Horse, some slower, and some quicker; and besides, as no Man plays on the Lute, but the same Strings that he stops with his left-hand, he always strikes with his right-hand, or else it would be ill musick; So

in riding, whatsoever you touch, or help with your left-hand, you must strike with your Heel, or Calf of your Leg, or else it will be ill musick on Horseback : And therefore a good Horseman should never fail to have Hand and Heel to go together, no more than the Musician his two Hands together.

Here Ends the Third Part.

THE



THE
FOURTH PART,
WHICH

Contains all the Faults and Errors the Horse can commit ; with the Vices, and Horse's Sins in the Mannage, and the ways how to rectify him, and the Medicines how to cure him.

NO Horse makes a fault, but it is either in his Shoulders, or his Croup ; either before, or behind : That is, he doth either disobey the Hand or the Heel.

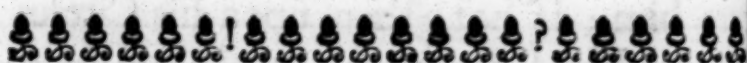
If you work Horses, as I have told you, in the first Lessons, he can never be entier, which is, not to turn ; for, entier is to put in his Croup, and put out his Shoulders ; and those Lessons puts out his Croup, and in his Shoulders, which

is contrary to entier : So that suppling a Horse's Shoulders thus, a Horse can never be entier ; for indeed, it is the stiffness of his Shoulders, more than his Croup ; and working as I have told you, he shall never be entier : But, if he be very obstinate, pull the inward Cavazone's Rein hard to you, and spur him on the inside, and that will cure him.

If the Horse doth not obey the Heel, but puts out his Croup, then his Head to the Wall (Leg and Rein contrary) will cure him ; if not, then upon his Circles put his Head from the turn, and help him with your outward Leg, and spur him, (if there be cause) then bring in your inward Shoulder, which puts in his Croup ; but his Legs go false : If this will not do, then pull the outward Cavazone's Rein to the turn, which infallibly will put in his Croup, but falser than the other ; because now he is pull'd to look out of the turn, and his Croup before his Shoulders, and his Legs very false ; but what is good for the Stomach, is ill for the Liver, and one must not rectify to many things at once ; but when you have cured the vice, fall to the true way of riding again.

When

When a Horse goes false upon his terra a terra, in bringing in his Shoulders too much, and taking too much Ground with his fore-parts, there is no way to remedy it, like tying the inward Cavazone's Rein as straight as possibly you can to the Pommel ; for then he hath not so much room to bring in his Shoulders, though it appears otherwise ; but thus he takes shorter Steps, and less Ground ; and then he is cured.

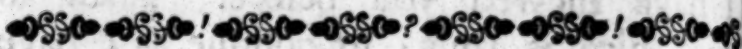


To work only with the Bridle, a Horse that hath the vice of bringing in his outward Shoulder too much.

THis vice is disobeying both the Hand and the Heel ; but more the Hand : For, no Horse can bring in his Shoulders too much, but he must put out his Croup ; and no Horse that bringeth in his Shoulders too much, but he comes into the turn, and keeps not his Ground ; and if he rise too high, he hath more liberty to bring in his outward Shoulder : Then the Business to recover him of that vice is, to keep him low, and to make him go forward truly, both with

with his Legs and Body, you sitting in the right posture as you should, and with true and right helps for terra a terra, as I have shewed you before. Then to cure him is thus; sit oblique as I have shewed you, pulling the inward Rein, your Hand on the outside of his Neck, your Knuckles towards his Neck; and to keep him down, that he shall not rise too high, your bridle-hand as low as his Neck, and that will keep him down; and there is half his vice cured, that he cannot come in so much. And now to keep him from coming in at all; because his coming in is by reason of his not going forward: Therefore to make him go forward, you must help with both your Legs; and as the outward Leg keeps in his Croup, so the inward Leg puts him forward; so the Hand low keeps him down, and both Legs puts him forward, and then he is cured with right helps, and goes truly. This I have tried, and find it to be most true; where all the other helps may do, but they are false, both for the Man's sitting, and the Horse's going; therefore I set down none but this, because you should not use them: Doing Voltoes may be good sometimes,

sometimes, for this vice may fix his Croup.



Observations.

MAny Horses, though they can do nothing but trot, yet when they are prest in the mannage, they will make a shuffling amble ; nay, they will perfectly amble, which is the worst action for the mannage that possible can be ; and therefore to hinder them of that action, there is nothing better, than to pull in their Heads into the turn as much as possible you can, and to put them upon as narrow Circles as you can ; and this will hinder them from ambling : And to give them the Spurs soundly, when they amble, will also put them from ambling : Many strong Horses will amble when they are prest in the mannage, but commonly Horses amble out of weakness, either by Nature, or that they are almost tired : As soon as Foles are foled, we see that they all amble at first, because they are so weak ; and after they come to a little strength, then they trot.

There

There are many Horses, that whensoever they are prest, they will put up their Heads; it may be to shun the pressure of being put upon the Hanches; for, holding up their Heads puts them off of the Hanches. To remedy this, tie the Cavezone, my way, to the Pommel; for, that pulls down his Head, and therefore must put him on the Hanches: But the Horse, to hinder that, will strive still not to be upon the Hanches, by putting out his Croup; then you must spur him on that side until he obeys you: It may be he casts up his Head, because he doth not obey the Curb; then you must trot him, and stop him; and gallop him, and stop him, and pull him back; and this upon the Shoulders, and then he is cured.

Whensoever a Horse goes too much on the Back, and fetches disordered leaps, there is no way better to hinder him, than to hold him well and fast on the Hand; for, a slack Hand gives him liberty to leap, when a stiffer Hand hinders him from leaping.

When a Horse uses to go low in Corvets, and that by much rest, and many holy-days, or but little riding, the Horse goes too much on the Back; there is no-
Z thing

thing takes him off more, than to put in his Croup, and his outward Hanch, for that subjects his hinder-parts so much, as he is hindred, and tied up from crouping, or going upon the Back: But before you come to that, it were very good to trot and gallop him so long upon large Circles, D'une piste, until you find that you have totally abated his Chine, and taken him off of his Back, and then put in his outward Hanch, to subject his Croup again, that he may go on the Hanches, and not to go on the Back.

For there is nothing in the World puts a Horse more upon the Hanches, than the Cavezone my way tied to the Pommel, and to press him on the outside of the turn, that he may lean on the outside; that is, to lean on his outward Leg, that is, on his outward hinder-leg, which is done by the inward Rein cross his Neck, or tied to the Pommel, to put him on the outside.

If a Horse will not trot right, but wrangle in his going, between a false trot, and a false gallop; then tie the inward Rein of the Cavezone very straight to the Pommel, and put out his Croup very much upon large Circles; and if he still doth jumble, and falsify his Legs

give him the Spur, within the turn ; or both Spurs soundly, and good stops ; and this infallibly will make him trot right, and go just upon his trot, or gallop, as he should do.



Of a resty Horse.

A Resty Horse is he that will not go forward ; the way then is, to pull him backwards, and then he will go forwards : It seldom fails ; but if it do fail, then use your Spurs to the purpose ; and though he rebels a great while, the Spurs will perswade him at last, being the best argument you can use to him, if they be given sharply, (soundly, and in time) and are continued until he doth yield, which certainly he will do at last ; for this remedy never fails ; all other remedies are foolish ; you were as good apply Rose-water and Sugar-candy to him ; Therefore the Spurs does the Business, For all our old Writers were mightily deceived in it.

For a Horse that is retenu, paresus, or contre-cœur, which is all but a spice of restiness, be sure to use the Spurs.

For a Horse that falls down upon the Ground, or in the Water; bites, or strikes; nothing better than the Spurs. But I must tell you, for vitious Horses, that indangers the company by biting, and striking, there is no better way than to geld them; for that will cure them, or nothing. But I assure you, that vitious Horses are very hardly recovered, or never; so dangerous a thing it is to have such a Jade, and the worst, if he be spoil'd by an ignorant Rider: And more Horses are spoil'd by ill riding, and are made vitious, than by Nature.



Of a run-away Horse.

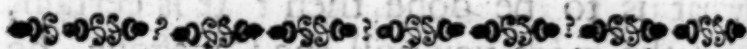
FOR run-away Horse, you must have a gentle Bitt, the Curb slack, a gentle Cavezone, that nothing may hurt his Mouth, or his Nose; for, certainly sharp Cavezones, and cruel Bitts, hard curb'd, made Horses run-way heretofore, making them desperate. You must also have a gentle Hand, offend him no way; and walk him first without stopping, but staying of him by little and little; and then trot him; and from his trot, to his walk; and

and so by little and little stay him : And always make much of him when he obeys you. And from his trot, you must gently gallop him ; and from his gallop, to a trot ; and from his trot, to his walk ; and from his walk, by little and little, stay him, and always with a gentle Hand. This is to prevent him from running away.

But put the case he doth run-away, what is to be done then ? It is certain, that the more you pull the Cavezone, he will run the faster to oppose you ; and the more you pull the Bridle, and straighten the Curb, hurting him, the more you pull, the more he will pull, and run the faster ; for pulling doth no more good, than if you pull'd a Wall : Then if you have field-room, when he begins to run, give him the Spurs continually, sharply, and soundly, and slack the Bridle, and Spur him until he begins to slack of himself, and to be contented to stay ; and as often as he begins to run, use the same way, and at last I dare undertake he will be cured : For this is the best way in the World for a run-away Horse.

But if you have not room, and are circumscrib'd in a narrow place, then let

him run circularly, until he is weary, with a slack Hand: But if you have not room, the best is, to put him to the single Pillar, with a good strong Rope; both which will hold him, and there he can run but circularly, and round; and give him the Spurs soundly, until he be weary, and contented to stay; and this at last, no doubt, will cure him.

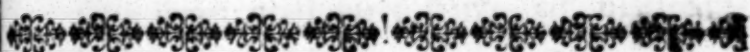


Of a Horse that retains his Forces.

WHen a Horse retains his forces, you must gallop him fast, and so terrify him, to put him from thinking; for it is his resty thinking, that makes that vice: And let me tell you, that ill Riders, and Bunglers, at the first, make (for the most part) all these faults, and vicious Horses, by ill riding, correcting them out of time, or else in letting them have their wills too much.

Let me tell you for a great truth, that the worst natured Jade in the World by nature, is much easier dress'd, and reduc'd to obedience, than a Horse that hath been spoil'd, and made resty by ill riding; so much worse is an ill custom
continued,

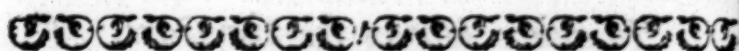
continued, than an ill disposition by nature : For, a customary Drunkard is hardly reclaimed, which is not by nature ; and if men be so, Horses may well be so too.



To assure Horses for the wars.

AS when a Horse is skittish, and apprehensive of Noise, there are many inventions, and none of the best. To stop the Horse's Ears with Wool, that he should not hear ; that is, to make him deaf, and to change the vice for the disease of deafness ; but the vice remains still. What if the Wool should fall out ? Then you would find he was not cured. But you may also be deceived, for it may be it is another sense ; that's sight : And being afraid of Fire, when the Guns are fired, would you put Spectacles on him to make him both deaf and blind ? They are great follies. Therefore you must use him by little and little, to shot, both to the noise and sight of the Fire ; to Drums, Trumpets, and Colours ; and the custom of them will make him endure it, and go constantly upon any of them ;

them; Sword, or any thing; for custom doth all things with Men, and so with Horses. You should teach him to leap Hedge, Ditch, and Rail; for all these are the useful things for a Soldier's Horse; as also to swim well is very necessary.



Of vitious Horses.

WHen a Horse bites at his Shoulders, and at his Bitt, and at his Riders Legs, and rises, and turns round, ready to come over: The best remedy that I know, is, to ride him without a Cavazone, to offend him as little as may be; and to tie the Nose-band as straight as you can; as also to have another Nose-band below, where the Bitt is tied; and to tie that as straight as possibly can be; so straight, as he cannot open his Mouth: And when the Horse finds that he cannot bite, he will leave those jadish Tricks in a little time. And because the Spurs, given him out of time, appear to be the cause of his vitiousness, and restiness, therefore do not give him the Spurs of a great while, but only trot him upon large

large Circles, and walk him quietly, and peaceably; and when you have gained him to this point, upon a peaceable and little gallop, you may then touch him with the Spurs, but very gently, only to make him feel them, and no more; and this way will cure him, or else nothing.

The old way for Trench and Martingal.

THis way is to no purpose at all to dress a Horse, since the end of riding is, to go with the Bitt; for, with the Trench and Martingal, you must use both Hands, and you have not a third Hand for the Sword; but with the Bitt, your left-hand governs the Horse, and your right-hand is free for the Sword: But I will let you see, that to use the Trench and Martingal, is just so much time lost, as you ride Horses with it, and no preparation at all for the Bitt: For first, the Trench hath no Curb, therefore they will not understand the Curb by it, because it hath none. Then secondly, there is no Trench in the world, or Snaffle, that ever wrought upon the
Bars

Bars of a Horse, but upon his Lips, and the Weeks of his Mouth. So, what preparation is there in the Trench for the Bitt, when the Trench can neither make him understand the Curb, nor the Bars? And the Bitt works only upon those two places, Curb, and Bars; and without those two, no Horse can be a ready-horse. Nay, pull down the Horse's Head as much as you can with the Martingal, or the Trench, it shall never work upon his Bars; the Snaffle is the same; for the Trench is but a great Snaffle: Then for the Martingal, use it never so long, the Horse shall not be settled one jot the better when you take it off.

So now you may see how unuseful and folly the Trench and Martingal is, for the dressing of Horses; merely so much time lost to no purpose, and labour in vain, and disordering the poor Horse; so that I wonder at the Horse-men, that had no more wit than to use it.

It is the Bitt, with the Cavezone, and the true art of Riding, that makes, and dresses Horses perfectly, and not the Trench and Martingal; no, nor the martingal with the Bitt, if it be tied to the arches of the Bitt, for then the Curb never works; no, nor the new-fashioned

Martingal

Martingal, that is tied to the Cavezone, for it hinders the operation of the Bitt.

Of the false Reins.

TO work Horses with false Reins, is very false working; for, being tied to the Arches of the Bitt, and pulling it, that slacks the Curb: and so no Horse shall be firm, and settled with it; for, that Horse that doth not suffer the Curb, shall never be a ready-horse; so it makes the Bitt like a Snaffle.

There is no way but the Cavezone, and the Bitt, to settle and dress Horses withal perfectly; and when a Horse is perfectly settled upon the Hand, (then being put upon the Hanches) he will go so perfectly, and easily, as you shall hardly feel him upon the Hand, the Bridle will be so slack, and he will go so just.

If you work, as this Book instructs you, you shall never have any Horse vicious in any kind, if no body else have rid him; and after he is drest to that Perfection, he will hardly make you a fault, if you work as you should do.



*Of the follies of some People, thinking they
can make leaping-horses.*

THere are many presumptuous Fellows, as ignorant as they are presumptuous, that laughing, say, they will make any Horse a leaping-horse. Why? Because they will make him leap over a Stick, like a Jack-anapes, or a Dog; or make a Horse leap over a Barrel, a Rail, Hedge, or Ditch. If that were all, we should have many leaping-horses; for I know hardly any Horse but will do it, without any great Art: God help their ignorance, poor Fools! For, a Horse to leap so, is not the same leaping, as a Horse leaps in the mannage.

First, for their Horses that leaps over Hedge and Ditch, and of their fashion; they lay the Reins on his Neck, and put him forward, which is a leap of their fashion, but not a leap in the mannage: And where they give him the Reins to leap, we hold him, and help him up with the hand to leap, and so with our heels, if it need, at the same time: And thus the Horse obeys both the hand and the

the heels, at the same time ; hath an excellent Mouth, and a good Apuy, both upon the Bars, and the Curb.

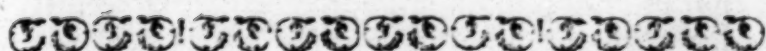
A Gentleman's huntsboy, though he can leap his Master's Gelding over a Hedge, will not make him leap upon the Bars and the Curb with his Snaffle ; since his Snaffle hath no Curb, and his Snaffle never works upon the Bars, but upon the Weeks, and Lips of his Horse's Mouth : Besides, our Horses will leap so in a place and not at leap-frog, as their Horses, or at barley-break, to leap two or three Yards forward without feeling of his Mouth. Thus doth ignorance talk of things they do not know : Nay, some Horse-men hath been so foolish, as to think they could make a leaping-horse, with laying fur-bushes for him to leap over, which is the same as a Hedge ; so foolish they have been : And now you see the truth of this, truly anatomized to you.



Of a Horse that goes Incaputiato, which is, when he arms himself against the Bitt.

OUr learned Authors are mightily mistaken about this vice, as they call it, saying, a Horse is at no command, and hard on the hand, because the branches rest upon his Neck, or Shoulders, and you cannot pull, or help him with your hand at all ; wherein they are horribly deceived : For, I have had Horses that have armed themselves against the Bitt, as much as any Horse could do, and yet were as sensible to the hand, and as light on the hand, as any Horse in the World ; so they are mightily mistaken : For, if the Horse goes perfectly upon the Hanches, he must be light on the hand, let him arm, or his head be never so low ; and therefore they are deceived that thinks otherwise.

This



This should have been put in the second Part.

FOr *terra a terra*, you must help with the inward Rein; press him on the outside, and your outward Shoulder a little down; and then his outward Shoulder cannot come in, as it doth with the other way before-mentioned: And thus the Horse is prest all on the outside of his outward hinder-leg, and so upon the Hanches; which in the other is upon the Shoulders, and the Horse being prest on the outside, his Legs are at Liberty, to lead on the inside, and so he goes even, and not cross; which is the exact and right *terra a terra*.



A N
E P I T O M Y
O F
HORSE-MANSHIP.

In all Ayres you must help with the outward Rein.

First for Corvets ; you must help with the outward Rein, and if the Horse be not on the Hanches enough, you must soutenir more, not give him a time, but hold him up more upon the Hands : And if his Croup go out, you must put your outward Leg a little to him ; and if he put his Croup in too much, you must put your inward Leg a little to him, and turn your Hand a little more, just over his Neck, and only turn it up, but not within his Neck.

You

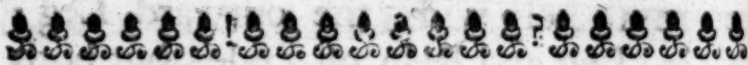
You must help with the outward Rein to bring in his outward Shoulder ; for if that did not come in, he could not turn upon Voltoes ; and so his Croup is a little at Liberty, which makes him go the easier, freer, and at more Liberty to go straight forward.

To go Bias, on either hand, you must still help with the outward Rein, and Soutenir ; that is, hold him up, without giving him a time : For, the Horse gives himself a time better than you can, and you must help with the outward Leg ; that is, Leg and Rein of a side, but both on the outside still.

To make him go back in Corvets, use the outward Rein ; but here you must give him a time with your Hand every Cadence that he makes, and your Hand closer to your Body ; not to pull him back, but to give him a time ; and as he falls, that time is to be a little back, but not above a Straw breadth : Let your Body be a little forward, your Legs a little back, and sit not too strong.

Of Demy-Ayres.

YOU must use the very same Helps, as in Corvets, in every thing : For, when his Croup is within the Voltoe, if you help, as I have told you, (so you put him forward) he will go easily, and just, as a Horse should always go forward, in every thing, but when you will pull him back.

*Of Leaps.*

USe the outward Rein still, but you must soutenir more ; that is, to hold him up harder, and not to give him a time, but still to hold him up, for the Horse gives himself the best time ; and do not help with your Legs, but only Hands and Rod ; and the Rod under hand, and help him in time, and as much upon the Dock as you can, to make him strike out.

Upon Voltoes use the outward Rein ; but here his Croup must be a little out, to give him Liberty, for else he could not go, if his Hanches were subjected, and he must

Of Dressing HORSES. 285

must go larger upon his Voltoes, as if he went forward with all the Liberty that may be; for this is a forcible Ayre.



Of Pessades.

STill use the outward Rein, to bring in his outward Shoulder; and so in Demy-Voltoes.

So in the Piroyte, with the outward Rein; but not to turn the Hand on the inside of his Neck, and keep him low.

To gallop and change, with the outward Rein still.



Of Terra a Terra.

Here you are to use the inward Rein, for now you must keep the outward Shoulder Back, and give his inward Shoulder Liberty, that he may look into the Turn, rest upon his outward Legs, and his inward Legs at Liberty, which you may know by his Neck leaning on the outside.

You

You must know, that the outward Rein brings in his outward Shoulder, presses him on the inside, and gives his outward Legs liberty, and so his Croup goes a little out.

Use the outward Rein in Passager: for, if his outward Shoulder comes not in, how shall he lap one Leg over another, which they call Incavelar in Italian, and Passager in French?

Now, whatsoever makes his Croup go out upon a Trot, or Gallop large, it works his Shoulders; so his Croup going out (Leg and Rein on a side) works his Shoulders, because his inward Leg goes out as upon large Circles, his inward Leg being wrought: This working his Shoulders is an excellent thing for a young Horse, or an ignorant Horse at first; for without his Shoulders be supple, he shall never go: Besides, it keeps him from being Entier, or have the Credenza, which is, Resty in Turning, and is the worst Vice a Horse can have.

To work his Croup.

Leg and Rein contrary, his Head to the Wall, works his Croup, so the inward Rein be pulled.

Cross his Neck, Leg and Rein contrary, his Croup in, works his Croup, so the inward Rein be pull'd cross his Neck; his Croup in, the inward Rein pull'd hard on the outside, so that his Neck may lean on the outside, works his Croup.

In his Length the same, and raise him in Pessades his Croup in, works his Croup; and all this puts him upon the Hanches to Boot, which is all our Business.

Now, as you are working his Croup, you must give him the Spur now and then, to make him flie; for he never obeys it, until he flies it; it is not a Correction with the Spur, but a little Touch; which may be given him upon large Circles too; that is, he must flie it, and yet be upon the Hanches: This touch gently with the Spur, may be upon any thing; to thrust him like a Career, to stop him, and thrust him away presently again, makes him obey the Heel perfectly; stopping, and going back,
and

and raising of him, puts him upon the Hanches.

You must understand, that a Horse having two Hinder-Legs, when his inward Hinder-Leg is put out, by the outward Rein, then his outward Shoulder is wrought, and his Croup out, and not up on the Hanches; is prest within, and at Liberty without.

But when his outward Leg is prest by the inward Rein, and your outward Leg, then his Croup is wrought, and he is up on the Hanches; so the outward Rein works the Shoulders, and the inward Rein (with the outward Leg) works the Croup, and puts him upon the Hanches, and the more, if you raise him in Pessades.

To work his Fore-parts, and his Hinder-parts; to press him on his Legs, without the Turn, and at Liberty within the Turn; to press him on his Legs without the Turn, and at Liberty without the Turn; to obey the Hand and Heel, and to be upon the Hanches, is all that is to be done: And this that I have written doth it perfectly.

Until he be supple on the Shoulders and stop perfectly upon his Trott, and perfectly settled upon the Hand, he shall

ne

ever be a Ready-Horse: The way to supple his Shoulders best, is the Cavezone Way; and to pull the inward Rein to your Knee, which brings in his outward Shoulder; galloping puts him upon the Apuy; but never gallop him until he Stop perfectly upon his Trot, and that he is so light as he offers to gallop of himself. The stop upon a Trot, must be hard, and on a sudden; the Stop upon a Gallop, with two or three little alcadoces; and never stop and raise him together, but stop first, and raise him afterwards.

To work his Croup, you must use the Cavezone's Rein cross his Neck; which puts him so on the outside, that you may feel his outward Hanch to go High, and his Neck to lean on the Outside. So that pulling the Cavezone to your knee, brings in his outward Shoulder, and supples his Shoulders; presses him on the inside; and puts him at Liberty on the outside. So pulling the inward Cavezone's Rein cross his Neck, works his Croup; that is, his outward Hanch being put in, (Leg and Rein contrary) he leans all on the Outside, and makes him obey the Heel; presses him on the outside, and gives him liberty within the Turn:

Turn: Never stop him, but put your outward Leg to him; or else he cannot be upon the Hanches.



An effectual Discourse of Horse-manship

Certainly the Foundation of all Ayres in the Mannage and the Ground of every thing, is, Trotting, and Stopping, with looking into the Turn; a gentle Stop, not too hard, which puts a Horse upon the Hanches, and settles him upon the Hand; because it pulls him down before; but too Hard a Stop pulls him up before; and therefore puts him off of the Hanches.

To make him look into the Turn, the Cavezone, my Way, and pulling the inward Rein to your Knee, low, or beyond it, brings in his outward Shoulder, and bends him into the Turn very much; supples his Shoulders, presses him within the Turn, and leaves his Legs at liberty without the Turn; and pulling him down before, makes him stop well: But see still, that his outward Shoulder comes in, and then he shall never be Entier; which is the greatest Vice a Horse can have.

To

To tie the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Pommel, puts a Horse on the Outside, and presses him there, except your inward Leg puts out his Croup; therefore I would have you tie the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Girths below, which presses him within, and gives Liberty to his Legs without the Turn, and brings in his outward Shoulder: And thus tied to the Girths, is more powerful, than if you held it in your Hand; for, many Horses may force your Hand, which they cannot do, when it is tied to the Girths; and pulling him down thus, makes him stop well. Going Back sometimes, is an excellent thing to put him on the Hanches, to put him on the Hand, and to make him light on the Hand, and to make him advance.

For Passager, there is nothing better, than tying the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Girths; for it brings in his outward Shoulder, to lap one Leg over another, and supples his Shoulders.

Pessades is a rare thing to put a Horse upon the Hand, and prepare him for all Ayres; it puts him on the Hanches too; and especially is excellent for Leaping-Horses; and all this with the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths; up-

on a Trot, or *Le petit Gallop*, it is an excellent thing to give him a little touch with the Spur, to make him flie it, and obey it; but then it must not be abandoned upon the Shoulders, but upon the *Hanches*, when he feels the Spur.

The *Cavezone* is the rarest thing in the world for dressing of Horses; not only to preserve their Mouth, but to give them the Ply, which is to bend them into the Turn, to make them look into the Turn, to work their outward Shoulder, to bring it into the Turn: And thus to supple their Shoulders, either upon a Trot, or Gallop *D'une piste*; or *Passager* the Croup in, or Leg and Rein on a side; and all this to supple the Shoulders, which is a principal thing.

The *Cavezone* again, (Leg and Rein contrary) works a Horse's Croup; his Croup out, as if it were to the Pillar, or his Croup in for *Passager*, or to the Wall; for Leg and Rein contrary, works his Croup; for it puts him on the *Hanches*, because it presses him on his outward Legs, and makes him subject to the Heel; for he cannot get from it, so Leg and Rein contrary works his Croup, as the former wrought his Shoulders; *Prest* him within, and gave him Liberty without:

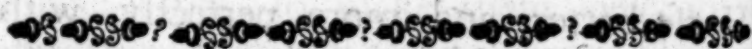
out: So this Leg, and Rein contrary presses him without, and gives him Liberty within. But when you work Leg and Rein contrary, I would wish you to have the Cavezone's Rein in your Hand; for so you will help him the better.

Thus you see how powerful the Cavezone is to work Shoulders, or Croup, or any thing for the perfect dressing of Horses; so that I will undertake to dress a Horse better, and more perfectly, with a Cavezone without a Bitt, than with a Bitt without a Cavezone; therefore use the Cavezone; but then it must be my Way, or else it is of little effect.

Since Trotting, and Stopping upon the Trot, is the Foundation of all Ayres in the Mannage, therefore highly esteem of it, and practise it most; that is, never do any thing with your Horse, until he stop perfectly upon his Trot; for, if you do, you will perfectly spoil him for ever.

Whether upon a large Circle D'une piste his Croup out, upon a Trot, or his Croup in, or straight by a Wall: When you stop, be sure you put your Body back, and pull in your Bridle-hand, but not too suddenly at first; and be sure you pull the inward Rein hard, to put him on the

outside, to rest on his outward Hinder Leg, which puts him upon the Hanches; so that you may be sure, at the same time, to help him with your outward Leg, which certainly will put him effectually upon the Hanches, which is our main Business, and Work: And therefore do this perfectly, and it will pull down his Head.



Another Lesson to put him upon the Hanches, which is very effectual.

TO put a Horse upon the Hanches, tie the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Girths, and then walk him D'une piste, or a short Trot, your inward Leg to him, and be sure he neither puts his Croup out, nor in; for if he doth either, this Lesson is of no Force; but if he doth not, there is nothing puts him more on the Hanches.

It is very material, for the dressing of Horses in the Mannage, to know the several Operations of the inward Cavezone's Rein (my Way) tied to the Girths, or tied to the Pommel.

WHen the inward Cavezone's Rein is tied to the Girths, it works his outward Shoulder, presses his Legs within the Turn, and leaves his Legs at liberty without the Turn.

It is excellent to trot him large or narrow D'une piste, or gallop him large or narrow D'une piste, for this supple his Shoulders, his Croup a little out, which brings in his outward Shoulder more.

It is good also, Leg and Rein on a side, his Croup out, to supple his Shoulders.

It is excellent in Passager, his Croup a little in, to lap one Leg over another, because his outward Shoulder comes in; but if you press his Croup too much in, it is impossible he should go; because the Rein, being tied to the Girths, works his outward Shoulder; and putting his Buttock in too much, puts his out-
ward

ward Shoulder back ; and two Contraries is impossible to be wrought at once.

It is excellent for *Le petit Gallop*, his Croup a little in, and proper for it, because it works his Shoulders.

The inward Rein tied to the Girths, is proper and excellent for Corvets, because it brings in the outward Shoulder, and so consequently gives a little liberty to the Croup.

In all these Lessons, if his Shoulders come not in enough, you must turn your Bridle-hand a little, which works the outward Rein, and so consequently the outward Shoulder.

This working of the Shoulders, makes all Horses easy ; and thus wrought, they shall never be Entier.

This tying the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Girths, is an oblique Line within the Turn, and therefore works his outward Shoulder.

The inward Cavezone's Rein, tied to the Pommel, is an oblique Line cross his Neck, and this Line puts back his outward Shoulder, and puts forward his inward Shoulder ; presses him on the Outside, and gives his Legs liberty within the Turn, and is most proper for *Terra a Terra*, which never any found out but
my

my self; but it is naught for Corvets, because it subjects his Croup too much; but this works his Croup mightily, either Leg or Rein contrary, his Croup out; or Passager, his Croup in; either in his Length, or a little Larger; and so to raise him in Pessades; and makes him infinitely subject to the Heel.

But this oblique Line crosses his Neck to the Pommel, is not so powerful, as when I have it in my Hand, and pull it to my outward Shoulder, because the Line is then longer, than when it is tied to the Pommel.

When his Head is to the Wall, (if you would work his Shoulders) then pull the inward Cavezone's Rein to your Knee; if you would work his Croup, then pull the inward Cavezone's Rein to your outward Shoulder.

There is no doubt, but that, though the inward Cavezone's Rein be tied to the Pommel, to trot him upon large Circles, or to gallop him large, it works his Shoulders; but the Reason of that is, because his Croup is out, and then of necessity his outward Shoulder must come in.

If you can work, according to these Precepts, and apply these excellent Lessons

sons to the Horse, and see perfectly where the Fault lies, either in his shoulders, or his Croup, you will infallibly make all Horses that ever come into your Hands; which I wish you may do, and not find Fault with it, because you cannot do it.

For Corvets forward, you must help with the outward Rein; your Hand not on the inside of his Neck; but just upon his Neck; your little Finger turn'd up, which pulls the outward Rein; and the Hand a little forward, which works upon the Curb, and to soutenir, which is to hold him up: Thus the Curb pinches him a little; and to give himself Ease of the Curb, he is forced to go upon the Hanches, and that is as I would have him.

Which way soever the Branches of the Bitt goes, the Mouth goes always contrary; you pull the Bridle, and that pulls the Branches up; then the Mouth goes down, which puts him upon the Hanches; for no Horse can be upon the Hanches when his Head is up.

This is the Truth in Corvets; and in all Ayres whatsoever, you must still help with the outward Rein, and never give time with your Hand, but only soutenir which is, to hold him up; for the Horse

will give himself a better time than you can: But going backward, you must help him every time, and with the outward Rein, your Body a little forward, and your Legs a little back; and sit easy upon him, and not too hard.

Upon Voltoes in Corvets, use the outward Rein, and in every thing as I told you before; only let the Horse go forward, as if he did not turn, which ought to be upon all Circles whatsoever, except the Piroyte; and commonly you are not to help with your Legs at all; but if you do, it must be the outward Leg a little to him. This is the perfection of all Ayres whatsoever.

The Quintessence of Horsemanship.

IF your Horse will not bend his shoulders, which is the principal thing, then tie the Cavezone, my Way, to the Girth, the inward Rein as strait as you can; but then you must work upon nothing but large or narrow Circles, his Croup out, either upon a Trot or a Gallop; or Leg and Rein on a side, his Croup out: and this infallibly will supple his shoulders, and he shall never be resty, nor entier.

But

But should you put in his Croup when he is tied so hard, it is so much against Nature, and such a forced thing, as it is impossible for him to go ; and so, to get what Ease he can, where you think to work his outward shoulder in, you put it back, and work his inward shoulder for the poor Horse hath no other way to ease himself. And thus Horsemen are deceived ; work against Nature, and spoil the Horse.

But if you would work his shoulders, and put in his Croup, then you must take the inward Cavezone's Rein in your hand, and pull it to your Knee, and help with the outward Leg ; this is not so great Force as the other, and therefore brings in his outward shoulder with Ease, and gives a little Ease to his Croup, being not so much in ; and therefore is proper for *Le petit Gallop*, his Croup in, and for *Passager* his Croup in ; most proper for *Gallop*, but not at all for *Terra a Terra* for there is none for *Terra a Terra* but my Way, which I wonder how I found out, it is so rare and true : For there the outward shoulder is kept back, and the inward shoulder forward, and the Cavezone's Rein to your Knee ; the outward shoulder comes in, and the inward should

der is kept back. This is the true Difference betwixt Le petit Gallop, and Terra a Terra, upon Circles. This you should get by heart, for it is the rarest thing in the world, because it is a subtile Truth.

To know the Degrees of tying the inward Cavezone's Rein, either to the Girths or the Pommel of the Saddle, which is the life or soul of the Mannage, never found out but by my self.

Begin with tying the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Girths, which works his outward shoulder, presses him within the Turn, and leaves his outward Legs at Liberty ; is fit for galloping large, or narrow, D'une Piste ; as also for Passage, either large, or in his length ; and for the Piroyte.

No Horse can go, or be made a Ready Horse, until his shoulders be extreamly supple ; and therefore this is the best Lesson in the world to supple his shoulders : but you must take heed of putting his Croup in too much, for it is impossible to put in his Croup, and put out his Croup all at one time ; for the Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths, puts out his Croup.

Croup, and at the same time you will put in his Croup with your Heel, which cannot be : And when the Horse finds your Ignorance, working Impossibilities, then he grows impatient and resty, as he hath great reason to be so. Therefore you must not tie the cavezone too strait ; for if you do, the Horse cannot go forward, but turns round, and so grows resty again, as he must needs do, which is your Fault, not his. You should tie the cavezone no straiter than to make him look into the Turn, and no more ; that is, so strait, that he cannot look out of the Turn : And thus he may go forward, and be pleased ; which is natural, and no Impossibility.

The inward cavezone's Rein tied to the Pommel is another Business ; for, this presses the Horse on the outside of the Turn, and leaves his Legs within the Turn at Liberty ; keeps back his outward shoulder, and works his croup, and his outward Hanch, and makes him subject to the Heel, because he cannot get from it ; so he obeys it, and flies it. This is proper for Terra a Terra, and Demi-Voltes upon the Ground ; but the inward cavezone's Rein must not be tied too strait for if it be, then the Horse cannot go
for

forward, no more than the other way, and will grow resty : So the inward cavezone's Rein must be pull'd no harder, than just to make him look into the Turn, and no more.

To pull the inward cavezone's Rein to your Knee, or beyond it, works the Horse's outward shoulder, presses him on the inside, and leaves his Legs at liberty without the Turn, supples his shoulders, and gives a little liberty to his croup ; and the inward cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths hath the same operation.

You are to know that the Invention of the pillars is a mere Routine ; that is, by Rote ; because it works by the Eyes, and not by feeling the Hand, and the Heels, and being obedient to them : So that this Method of the pillars, hath spoiled more Horses than any thing in the world, working upon the Eyes, by looking at the pillars ; and never any man wrought Horses well at the pillar, but *Pluvinel*, that devised them.

My Way is a method of the Cavezone, and there he goes not by Rote ; his Eyes do nothing here, nor the Voice ; but the Horses meerly obey the Hand and the Heel, which makes them all perfect, of
C s what

what nature or condition soever they be,
and never fails me.



*Of the Bridle and Bitt without the Carve-
zone.*

YOU must know, that the Bitt is a strange Engine; for wheresoever you pull the Cheek, the Mouth always goes contrary: When you turn up your little finger, it pulls the outward Rein, which works his Shoulder on the outside, and gives liberty to his Croup on the left Hand: Your little finger a little more turn'd up, and a little on the left side, works his outward Shoulder, and gives his Croup a little liberty, which is fit for Corvets, Trotting, and Galloping D'une piste; so in Pessades, excellent for passer, so for the piroyte. Here the Horse is prest within the Turn, and at liberty without the Turn.

For Corvets upon Voltoes, if his croup be at the center, put your outward Leg a little to him, and turn your hand a little, and Soutenir, and he will go perfectly upon his Turns if he goes forward, which is the main business, and the reason of
that

that is, because he goes a little Byas; this is all with the Reins, in your left-hand. And this makes him also go perfectly, *Le petit Gallop*.

For *terra a terra*, it is another thing, the Reins being in your left-hand; here you must pull the inward Rein, to press him on the out-side, and leave his Legs at liberty, within the Turn; and you must turn your fist inward, and turn it to your left-shoulder, close to it, which pulls the inward Rein, and your outward Leg close to him; thus he is prest on the out-side, and his Legs at liberty within the Turn; but for *terra a terra* on the left-hand, your Bridle still in the left-hand, you must turn your little finger up, and pull it close to your right-shoulder, helping with the outward Leg.

If the Reins be separated in both your hands, then you must pull the inward Rein, and your right-hand close to your left-shoulder, turning up your little finger, and your Leg gently on the out-side. But for the left-hand, the Reins separated in both your hands, you must pull the inward Rein close to your right-shoulder, holding up your left-finger gently, helping with the outward Leg: And so you see there is a great deal of difference betwixt

the Reins separated in both your hands, and when you have the Bridle only in your left-hand, (for the help is with your hands :) This is perfectly for terra a terra, and demi-voltées.

I have told you a Bit is a strange Engine ; for, wheresoever you pull the cheeks, the Mouth goes contrary ; If you work the outward Rein, you pull the outward cheek to you, and the mouth goes contrary, but in Corvets, and then it works in the middle of the Curb : For terra a terra, when you pull the cheeks to you, then his Mouth goes contrary, and looks into the Turn as he should do, and then the Curb works on the other side, contrary to the cheek, of what hand soever you go : If you pull the cheek strait, the Mouth goes down ; but when you put your hand, as far forward as you can, to the perpendicular Line, then that works hardest on the Curb. If you pull the inward Rein to your Knee, or from your body, Tribacato, that it leaves the cheek even to the Eye of the Bitt, then it works not at all upon the Curb, so great a difference there is betwixt the Cavezone and the Bitt ; for Terra a Terra, when you pull the inward Rein to your outward Shoulder, then the

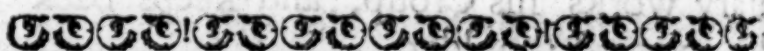
the Rein is a great deal within the Pommel, which hand soever you go on; but whensoever you help with the outward Rein, then your hand must be three fingers above the Pommel, and as many fingers before it: This is certainly the truth of the Bitt and Bridle. When I work the outward Rein of the Bridle, I find his Croup is lost, although I help with the outward Leg, because it is Leg and Rein both of a side; but Leg and Rein contrary works his Croup, and keeps back his outward shoulder.

The Cavezone being upon his Nose, is contrary to the Bitt; for if you pull up the Cavezone's Rein, you pull up his Head; and if you pull it down, you pull down his Head.

As for the false Reins, it is a very false thing; for the Reins being tied to the Arches of the Bitt, when you pull the Reins it slacks the Curb, and never works on it, like a Snaffle; nay, it is so much worse than a Snaffle, for a Snaffle will go to the Weeks of his mouth, or Lips; and though the Curb be slack, yet it will not suffer it to go so high, and therefore gawls all his Barrs. And this is the truth of the false Reins.

Of the Perfection of dressing Horses in the Mannage brought into so narrow a Compass, that if it be learned by Heart and punctually practised, it is impossible to fail dressing any Horse whatsoever.

Suppling and working a Horses Shoulders being the principal Thing of all, I therefore begin with it.



To supple a Horses Shoulders upon a Trott, or Le petit Gallop.

THe inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths, or in your Hand, pull'd to your Knee, supples his outward Shoulder, on the Right-hand at liberty without the Turn; and prest within the Turn, his outward Shoulder comes in, and his inward shoulder is kept back: But how doth this supple his inward shoulder for Terra a Terra; for there the inward shoulder is put forward, and his outward shoulder kept back? I will tell you perfectly how it is: On the Right-hand his outward shoulder is brought in, and suppled, and his inward shoulder kept back.

Now,

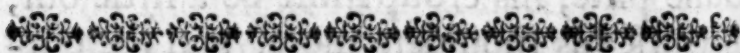
Now, what was on the Right-hand suppled, (which was his outward shoulder, and outward Leg for Terra a Terra) on the Left-hand is the same Leg, and the inward Rein there, and outward Leg puts back his outward shoulder, and brings in his inward shoulder and Leg. So it is the same Leg still, that was on the Right-hand his outward Leg, and is now his inward Leg on the Left-hand in Terra a Terra; and that's the Truth of it, for thus he is suppled. It is the very same of the other hand, and no difference at all. This I only write to let you see how working his shoulders prepares him for Terra a Terra, but we do not yet declare what works his outward shoulder.

You must know, that upon a Trot, or a Gallop, upon large or narrow circles Dune piste, his croup must be a little out, to work his shoulders more, and the outward Rein of the Bridle also to work it yet more; with a short Trot and a short Gallop, that he may not be too much upon the shoulders; the Cavezone's Rein tied thus, he never can go Terra a Terra, because his outward shoulder is wrought.

Trotting and stopping is the Foundation of all things in the Mannage, for it firms the Horse upon the Hand, and puts
him

him upon the Hanches : For stopping, you must pull him down ; that is, pull your Hand close to your Body, your Body back, and your inward Leg to him, to put his inward Leg to his outward. Going back is an excellent thing, both to firm him on the Hand, and make him light of the Hand ; as also to put him upon the Hanches, and to make him the apter to advance before.

The Petit Gallop pacifies furious Horses, and gives them an Apuy ; stopping upon a Gallop must be at two or three Falcadoes by a Wall strait forward, your Right-shoulder or Left-shoulder to the Wall, either forward or backward : There it is with the inward Rein, and inward Leg ; or not to help with your Legs, but as you see Occasion.



Another excellent Lesson to make Horses supple on the shoulders.

THere is nothing like Leg and the inward Cavezone's Rein on a side, as if his Head were to the Pillar, his Croup out ; for, though he goes on the Left-hand, he is supple on the Right-hand:

hand: This Lesson makes him that he can never be Entier, which is the worst Vice a Horse can have. Entier is to be resty in turning, which is very dangerous for the Man by coming over; for to oppose turning, he puts in his Croup with all the Force he can, and so puts out his shoulder craftily and maliciously, to hinder from turning. So this excellent Lesson is as if his Head were to the Pillar, Leg and Rein on a side, he puts out his Croup, where before he put it in, and that hinders him from being Entier; and when he puts out his shoulder, this brings it in, which hinders him more from being Entier; so that it cures him perfectly of that Vice: And going on the Left-hand, Leg and Rein on a side, it supples him more on the Right-hand: So going on the Right-hand, Leg and Rein on a side, supples his shoulders for the Left-hand; and a better Lesson there is not.

For



*For all Ayres whatsoever thus upon Vol-
toes.*

FOr all Ayres, it is with the outward Rein of the Bridle, that his outward shoulder may come a little in, that he may turn, which gives a little liberty to his Croup, and so turn the easier; and if the inward Cavezone's Rein be tied to the Girths, it will bring in his outward shoulder the better; and your outward shoulder being a little in, and higher than your inward shoulder, will bring in his outward shoulder the better; your Hand must be in this manner, on the Right-hand your Bridle-hand just over his Neck, turning up your little Finger, which pulls the outward Rein, as it should do, and Soutenir, which is to hold him up; for that puts him on the Hanches: The Reason is, that it presses him on the Curb; and he, to give himself ease on the Curb, goes on the Hanches, and then the Curb is a little slack. You must not put your Hand within his Neck, and bend him, for that puts him upon the shoulders, and you must always keep your Horse upon the Hanches. Now

Now for the Left-hand, you must do thus, the Bridle-hand a little within the Neck, and hold up your little Finger, and Soutenir, and it will work the same effect as on the Right-hand: With your Leg help not at all, and he will go perfectly well. If he puts out his Croup, put your outward Leg to him; if he puts in his Croup too much, put your inward Leg to him, and still Soutenir, to keep him on the Hanches; and remember, there is nothing makes Horses go well but the Seat; for he that hath not a good Seat, cannot have a good Hand: And there is nothing dresses Horses but the Hand and the Heels; and remember, the only thing in Ayres upon Voltoes, is to make your Horse go forward still, as if he did not turn; for so he goes easily and just; for if you turn your Hand too much, his Croup will go out.

And for all Aires, your Bridle-hand must be a little before the Pommel; and for the Pyroyte, you must help with the outward Rein, your outward shoulder being a little higher than your inward shoulder, and a little in towards his Left-ear on the Right-hand, and towards his Right-ear on the Left-hand; for the outward
Rein

Rein brings in his outward shoulder, and so consequently puts out his Croup: For, you must understand, that in trotting, one Leg is before another; so in galloping, one Leg is before another; in Terra a Terra, one Leg is before another; in the Piroyte, one Leg is before another; but in Corvets, or any other Ayre, it is not so, but much contrary, as thus: In Corvets his Legs are even, and not one before another; and though his Hinder-legs seem Wider than his Fore-legs; yet his Hinder-legs are within the Lines of his shoulders, which makes him go upon the Hanches.

When a Horse is perfectly obedient to the Hand, and the Heels; then put, in Corvets, your inward Leg a little to him, and help with the outward Rein of the Bridle, and Soutenir a little, and help gently with the inward leg; that is, put the Calf of the leg to him, and he will go perfectly upon his Aire, in Voltoes: For Groupadoes you must give his Croup a little more liberty, and not constrain it so much as in Corvets; and in Capriols not constrain'd at all, but rather even, or a little out; for a Horse in Capriols, if his Croup be subjected, it is impossible he should go; therefore in Capriols you must give

give his Croup all the Liberty that can be; and when you help with the Rod, it must be when he is falling, and not when he is rising, or else his Croup cannot Rise.



For Passenger, or Incavelar, which is to lap one Leg over another not every Time, but every second Time.

IN this Passenger, the Action is not so much as a Trot, but more than a Walk; an Action the fittest in the World to make a Horse understand the Hand and the Heels; because it is Gentle, and puts him into no Fury: And if he obeys my Hand and Heels upon Passenger, I can make him do any thing that his Forces will give him leave to do. Here the inward Cavezone's Rein must be tied to the Girths, or pulled to your Knee; for that works his outward Shoulder, which is most proper for Passenger, to make him lap his outward Legs over his inward Legs; and to make him do it the better, you must help with the outward Rein of the Bridle: And thus ends this excellent Lesson.

D d

For

Rein brings in his outward shoulder, and so consequently puts out his Croup: For, you must understand, that in trotting, one Leg is before another; so in galloping, one Leg is before another; in Terra a Terra, one Leg is before another; in the Piroyte, one Leg is before another; but in Corvets, or any other Ayre, it is not so, but much contrary, as thus: In Corvets his Legs are even, and not one before another; and though his Hinder-legs seem Wider than his Fore-legs; yet his Hinder-legs are within the Lines of his shoulders, which makes him go upon the Hanches.

When a Horse is perfectly obedient to the Hand, and the Heels; then put, in Corvets, your inward Leg a little to him, and help with the outward Rein of the Bridle, and Soutenir a little, and help gently with the inward leg; that is, put the Calf of the leg to him, and he will go perfectly upon his Aire, in Voltoes: For Groupadoes you must give his Croup a little more liberty, and not constrain it so much as in Corvets; and in Capriols not constrain'd at all, but rather even, or a little out; for a Horse in Capriols, if his Croup be subjected, it is impossible he should go; therefore in Capriols you must give

give his Croup all the Liberty that can be; and when you help with the Rod, it must be when he is falling, and not when he is rising, or else his Croup cannot Rise.



For Passenger, or Incavelar, which is to lap one Leg over another not every Time, but every second Time.

IN this Passenger, the Action is not so much as a Trot, but more than a Walk; an Action the fittest in the World to make a Horse understand the Hand and the Heels; because it is Gentle, and puts him into no Fury: And if he obeys my Hand and Heels upon Passenger, I can make him do any thing that his Forces will give him leave to do. Here the inward Cavezone's Rein must be tied to the Girths, or pulled to your Knee; for that works his outward Shoulder, which is most proper for Passenger, to make him lap his outward Legs over his inward Legs; and to make him do it the better, you must help with the outward Rein of the Bridle: And thus ends this excellent Lesson.



For Pesates.

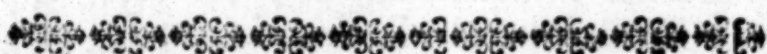
THe inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths, or pull'd to your Knee, you must help with the outward Rein of the Bridle; in Passèger, raise him as high as you can, and hold him there gently, and without Fougue, and walk him away again, and raise him again, and do this all along the Voltoe, and this is a right Pesate. This puts him upon the Hand, and prepares him for all Airs whatsoever; for without this, no Horse can go in any Air. Therefore this must be your first Lesson, before you ever offer to put him upon any Air: There is nothing more graceful in all Airs, than for a Horse to bend his Fore-Legs up to his Body; but there is more in it than that, for, what Horse soever that goes in Airs, if his Fore-Legs be stiff before, or that he paws with his Fore-Legs, necessarily he is on the Shoulders, for that puts him upon the Shoulders; and if he bend his Legs up to his Body, it puts him upon the Hanches; for it puts him backward, as being stiff before puts him

him forward, and so upon the Shoulders. Your Horse must always go forward except you pull him back:

You must remember, that the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths, or pull'd to your Knee, works his outward Shoulder; with the outward Rein of the Bridle; and all this is for le petit Gallop, and not for Terra a Terra: And to facilitate le petit Gallop the better, put your outward Shoulder higher than your inward Shoulder which infallibly works his outward Shoulder, as the outward Shoulder! down infallibly subjects and works his Croup. Your Legs must be as near to the Horse as you can without touching him, that your Helps may be the more Secret: Spurring is a Correction, but Pinching is an excellent help, and it must be done thus: First put your Leg as close to him as you can, and then turn your Heel to him and pinch him delicately; if his Shoulders come not in enough, the inward Rein being tied to the Girth, then bend his Neck with the outward Rein of the Bridle, as much as possibly you
Dd 2 can,

can, as if you would brake his Neck, and that shall supple his Shoulders sufficiently.

Here Ends these most excellent Lessons for Suppling of a Horse's Shoulders, which is the principal Business.



Of the Perfection, and Exact way of making Horses to obey the Heels.

IT is the inward Rein absolutely that makes him obey the Heel, and nothing else ; for it puts him on the out-side, which puts in his outward Hanch, so that he cannot get from the Heel, and therefore must necessarily obey it.

The inward Rein being to your outward Shoulder, or the inward Rein of the Cavezone to your outward Shoulder, and giving the Horse a little touch with the Spur now and then, doth admit of a Corvet when you go, the inward Rein to your outward Shoulder, the Horse's Head to the Wall, because it is side-ways, and not upon a Circle ; for the inward Rein (as if his Head were to the Pillar in Corvets, and his Croup out) subjects his Croup : The inward Rein in Corvets
strait

strait by a Wall, whether your Right-Shoulder, or Left-Shoulder be to the Wall, subjects still his Croup.

Nay, it is also the inward Rein, when he goes in Corvets backwards, whether your Right-Shoulder, or Left-Shoulder, be to the Wall. And if you go in Corvets strait by a Wall, it is still the inward Rein ; but if you make a Demy-Volto in Corvets, then it is the outward Rein, for else he cannot turn in Corvets ; and you may easily change from the inward Rein to the outward Rein, and not brake his time at all : But by no means his Croup in in his Air upon Circles, because it keeps out his outward Shoulder, keeping his outward Shoulder back, and then he cannot go in his Air upon Circles, because he cannot turn ; for it is the outward Rein in all Airs, that brings in his outward Shoulder, that he may turn, and his Croup a little at Liberty, that he may turn the easier.

But the inward Rein for Passenger, his Croup out, makes him obey the Heels ; so the inward Rein for Passenger, his Croup in, makes him obey the Heel, but not upon Circles, there it is the outward, for else he could not turn ; but in Pelates he

may do it, but not upon his Air, and in Pesates easily; for there he rises but once or twice, and goes in Passenger again: This is the exact way to make a Horse obey the Heel perfectly.



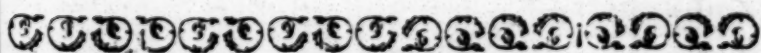
Of Terra a Terra.

IN Terra a Terra you must use the inward Rein, and the outward Leg; the inward Rein pull'd to your outward Shoulder, presses him on the out-side on his outward Hanch, makes him lean on the out-side, and look into the Turn; presses him on the out-side, and at liberty within the Turn; his Fore-Leg within the Turn leading, and his Hinder-Leg on the same side following, and his outward Leg short.

Thus his inward Shoulder is put forward, and his outward Shoulder kept back with your Hand: You must Soutenir as you do in Airs: But this is with the inward Rein, and your Bridle-Hand within the Pommel, looking into the Turn, poising upon your outward Stirrup a little, your outward Shoulder down, and in, which subjects his Croup: Thus you

you cannot put in his Croup too much ; for leaning on the outside, his Croup can never go before his Shoulder ; and thus he is forced to Terra a Terra in spight of his Teeth, and to go a time Pa Ta, Pa Ta, which is but two times ; and this was never found out but by my self.

But I must remember you of one thing ; which is, that if you tie the inward Cavezone's Rein to the Pommel, it works his Croup, and puts him on the outward Hanch, and makes him obey the Heel, but is not so powerful as the inward Rein to your outward Shoulder, because the Line to the Pommel is the shorter, and therefore not so powerful ; but if he presses too much, so that you cannot hold him, then tie it to the Pommel, and that will hold him sufficiently.

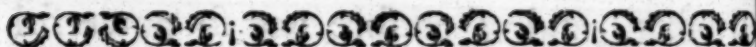


Of Pasadoes by a Wall.

THe exact way of Pasadoes by a Wall, is with the inward Rein both strait forward, and upon his Demy-Voltoes, for that subjects his Croup, and makes him go just, and look into the Turn, whether upon Le petit Gallop, or

a Toute Bride, it is all one, being a Demy-Voltoes, and is but half my Terra Terra, and therefore must have my helps which is the inward Rein, and the outward Leg. And all the other ways are false and senseless.

Remember, every Horse must take his own Air, and you are not to give him his Time, but to follow his, and so he will go exactly ; for if you offer to give him your Time, he will never go ; for Nature hath given him one Time, and you will give him another, which shall Spoil him for ever.

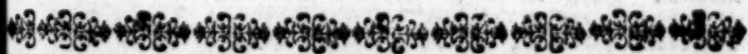


To give you more light to understand the difference betwixt the Working of the outward Rein, and the inward Rein in Corvets.

WHeresoever the Horses Croup is out, or strait by a Wall, either sideways in Corvets, or forward in Corvets, or backward in Corvets, or his Head to the Pillar in Corvets, it is all with the inward Rein, to subject his Croup, to put the inward Shoulder forward, and to keep the outward Shoulder back, which necessarily subjects his Croup, and

and the same when his croup is out, or strait by a Wall.

But now in corvets, when his croup is in upon Voltoes, or Demi-Voltoes upon circles, there you must help with the outward rein of the Bridle, and inward Leg, for else he could not turn; besides, here his outward shoulder must be brought in, and his inward shoulder kept back, that he may turn the easier being narrowed before, and enlarged behind, as the other was prest behind, and enlarged before; and with the outward Rein, his Croup hath a little Liberty: And here's the true difference betwixt the outward rein, and the inward Rein, in their several workings. But when you help with the outward Rein, you must help with the inward Leg gently.



For Terra a Terra (my way) upon Voltoes.

HERE I subject his croup, and enlarge his Foreparts; put forward his inward shoulder, and his outward shoulder is kept back; this is done with the inward Rein, and the outward Leg, the same helps serve for Pesadoes; for a Demi-

Demi-Voltoe is but half a Terra a Terra my way ; and therefore the same helps. I said upon Circles the outward Rein, but that was in corvets, and that is clear another Action, than Terra a Terra : So I would have you understand precisely what they are ; for it is the outward Rein and inward Leg, which is the perfection of corvets upon Voltoes ; and if you change put him forward one Corvet, and then help with the outward Rein and inward Leg which is the perfection of corvets upon Voltoes. I must remember you, that when a Horse goes in corvets his head to the Wall, it is with the inward Rein and outward Leg, but the Horses fore-part must go a little before his Croup, for he is more on the Hanches ; for if his Croup went before his Hanches, it is false. So if he go as if his Head were to the pillar, it is with the inward Rein and outward Leg, his foreparts being a little before his Croup. But strait by the Wall whether forward or backward, it is with the inward Rein and inward Leg. All this is in corvets. But upon Voltoe in Corvets it is with the outward Rein and inward Leg ; and to go forward still as if he did not turn.

Of a rare Way to dress a Horse perfectly.

IT is to make him narrow before, which is to put his inward hinder-leg to his outward hinder-leg: As for example, you pull the inward Cavazone's Rein to your Knee, or tie it to the Girths; this works his outward shoulder, and puts his inward hinder-leg to his outward hinder-leg, if you help him with your inward Leg, and the outward Rein of the Bridle; and thus he is narrowed before, and enlarged behind. This is upon large or narrow circles D'une Piste upon a Trot, and upon large or narrow circles D'une Piste upon a gallop, which makes him narrow before, and enlarg'd behind, with the same helps formerly spoken of.

In that excellent Lesson of Leg and Rein on a side, as if his Head was to the pillar, his inward hinder-leg is put to his outward hinder-leg, to narrow him before.

In Pasager (which is to lap his outward Legs over his inward Legs) the inward cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths, or pull'd to your Knee, doth not only work his outward Shoulder, but puts
back

back his inward hinder-leg to his outward hinder-leg, to narrow him before; and to narrow him more, you must help with the outward Rein of the Bridle, and help with your outward Leg gently.

In the Petit gallop upon circles the inward cavezone's rein tied to the Girths, puts his inward hinder-leg to his outward hinder-leg, and the more, if you turn your hand to help with the outward Rein of the Bridle; the Petit Gallop is one, two, three, and four, which is a right Gallop.

In Corvets upon Turns, the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths; or the outward Rein of the Bridle, with the inward Leg, puts his inward Hinder-leg to his outward Hinder-leg, narrows him before, and puts him on the Hanches: So all this is the inward leg put to his outward Hinder-leg, which is the effectual business.

In stopping, the inward Cavezone's Rein tied to the Girths, or pull'd to your Knee, with your inward Leg, narrows him before, makes him bow in the Gambrels, and puts him upon the Hanches, with pulling your Hand in.

As for the inward Rein, and outward Leg, it subjects his Croup, and puts his
inward

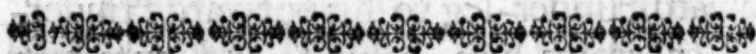
inward Hinder-leg to his outward Hinder-leg, and this narrows him behind, and enlarges him before ; so side-ways to the Wall, the inward Rein and outward Leg narrows him behind: putting his inward Hinder-leg to his outward Hinder-leg, narrows him behind, and puts him on his Hanches ; so his Head to the Pillar, the inward Rein and outward Leg puts his inward Hinder-leg to his outward Hinder-leg, narrows him behind, and puts him on the Hanches ; and so forward by a Wall of either side doth the same, and so backwards ; but here it is with the inward Rein and inward Leg both on a side, to put his inward Hinder-leg to his outward Hinder-leg, which is the All in All for dressing of Horses.

E c

Of



Of a most effectual way to dress Horses, and so true and certain, that whosoever shall Read it, Mark it, and Understand it, and carefully Practise it, will infallibly dress all manner of Horses to a great perfection.



To supple a Horse's Shoulders.

I Have given you many Lessons for it, but I will let you see it clearer than ever; You must pull the inward Cavazone's Rein low, and from your body, to bring in the Horses outward shoulder, which is the Business, and makes him bend like a Hoop, and then you are right. Upon Passenger his Croup must not be above a quarter in, at the most, for if it be, it pulls back his outward shoulder, which is false; and he will look out at the Turn, pull the Rein what you will, so pernicious is putting a Horse's Croup in when you would work a Horse's outward shoulder; but the other way makes him supple, and easy, to do any thing you

would

would have him, with great facility, and never to be Entier, but to go always Bias.

For Terra a Terra relevé, the Time, one, two, pa, ta, is done with the inward Rein pull'd to your outward shoulder, and with your outward Leg; so here you cannot put in his Croup too much; and thus he is straitned behind, and enlarg'd before, and indeed goes upon a Square, his inward shoulder being put forward, and his outward shoulder kept back.

Terra a Terra déterminé, is another business; for this is, as if a Horse did run a Career upon a Circle, where he cannot run in his length, and therefore his Voltoe or Circle must be larger, because it is but a Gallop; running being but the action of a Gallop: Here you must help with the outward Rein, and outward Leg, to narrow him before, and enlarge him behind, and to go Byas, and this is déterminé, Byas in Corvets, as if he did not turn, and so in le petit Gallop upon Circles; the outward Rein is used for both, and so in Passager, the outward Rein and Leg being Byas.

It is a great truth in Horsemanship, that both in Terra a Terra, Demy-Vol-

Of a most effectual way to dress Horses, and so true and certain, that whosoever shall Read it, Mark it, and Understand it, and carefully Practise it, will infallibly dress all manner of Horses to a great perfection.

To supple a Horse's Shoulders.

I Have given you many Lessons for it, but I will let you see it clearer than ever; You must pull the inward Cavazone's Rein low, and from your body, to bring in the Horses outward shoulder, which is the Business, and makes him bend like a Hoop, and then you are right; Upon Passenger his Croup must not be above a quarter in, at the most, for if it be, it pulls back his outward shoulder, which is false; and he will look out of the Turn, pull the Rein what you will, so pernicious is putting a Horse's Croup in, when you would work a Horse's outward shoulder; but the other way makes him supple, and easy, to do any thing you would

would have him, with great facility, and never to be *Entier*, but to go always *Bias*.

For *Terra a Terra relevé*, the *Time*, one, two, pa, ta, is done with the inward *Rein* pull'd to your outward shoulder, and with your outward *Leg*; so here you cannot put in his *Croup* too much; and thus he is straitned behind, and enlarg'd before, and indeed goes upon a *Square*, his inward shoulder being put forward, and his outward shoulder kept back.

Terra a Terra déterminé, is another business; for this is, as if a Horse did run a *Career* upon a *Circle*, where he cannot run in his length, and therefore his *Voltoe* or *Circle* must be larger, because it is but a *Gallop*; running being but the action of a *Gallop*: Here you must help with the outward *Rein*, and outward *Leg*, to narrow him before, and enlarge him behind, and to go *Byas*, and this is déterminé, *Byas* in *Corvets*, as if he did not turn, and so in le petit *Gallop* upon *Circles*; the outward *Rein* is used for both, and so in *Passager*, the outward *Rein* and *Leg* being *Byas*.

It is a great truth in *Horsemanship*, that both in *Terra a Terra*, *Demy-Vol-*

toes, and Pessades, as also in Passager, whensoever a Horse is straitned before, he is enlarged behind ; and whensoever he is straitned behind, he is enlarged before.

The exact way to make a Horse go perfectly, is a Square, and not a Circle, which subjects his Croup extremely.

In Corvets upon a Circle, it is impossible to help with the inward Rein, because the Horse cannot turn ; but the inward Rein upon a Square, is excellent, with the outward Leg, so he goes a little forward, every time a little : So excellent is the Square.

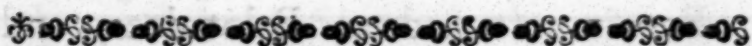
For Terra a Terra, there is nothing like a Square, with the inward Rein and outward Leg ; so upon Demy-Voltoes, in Pessades the same, in Passager the same still, upon a Square ; his head to the Pillar it must be a Square : The Square is the quintessence of the Mannage, and all this subjects his hinder Parts.

The inward Rein pull'd to your outward Shoulder, with the contrary Leg, subjects his Croup upon a Square, and makes him obey the Heel perfectly, because he cannot get from it.

But when you begin to dress a Horse in Corvets, Pessades is the ground of all Ayres ; a Pessade is to raise him high, and hold

hold him there. But when you put him in Corvets, it is with the outward Rein, and inward Leg, to be D'une piste; and to let him go three or four Corvets in a place, and walk him away again, and Corvet him again as before; and, in a little time, he will make a turn perfectly in Corvets.

But when he is perfect, then you must help with the outward Rein, and outward Leg, and Soutenir, and put him forward always a little, as if he did not turn, and then he will go perfectly in Corvets.



For the Bridle-Hand; which deserves to be well Observed, being the Sole of the Mannage, and the most Effectual thing that can possibly be.

IN Corvets on the Right-Hand, the little Finger of the Bridle-Hand must be pull'd up, which works the outward Rein, and foutenir.

On the Left-Hand, in corvets your Bridle must be on the inside of the Neck, your little Finger up, which pulls the outward Rein.

For Terra a Terra, the inward Rein must be pull'd to your outward Shoulder, and your little Finger pull'd up, which pulls the inward Rein, and soutenir, for the Right-hand, and your outward Leg.

For the Left, the inward Rein is to be pull'd to your outward Shoulder, your little Finger pull'd up straight, and Soutenir; and this pulls the inward Rein, your outward Leg being to him.

You see, that in corvets, you work the outward Rein, and in Terra a Terra, you work the inward Rein, which is not to be done any other way than as I have set down.

But in croupadoes, Balotadoes, and Capriols, there it is with the outward Rein, to give his croup liberty, or else he could not Leap, and, if there be cause, help him with the inward Leg a little, to give his croup more liberty.



Of some observations in Horse-Manship.

Whensoever a Horse is straitned before, he is enlarged behind; and whensoever he is straitned behind, he is

is enlarged before. This is a true Maxim.

But then you must consider, that in Passenger, his Croup in, or but half in, the narrower circle always subjects his Croup, though it be in his length, and though you work his outward Shoulder.

That which makes a Horse not take his time upon Corvets, is, that his hinder-Legs go upon his Toes, which makes him stiff in the Gambriils, and so off of the Hanches; he goes not forward, nor his Leg under his Belly; for to go upon his Hanches, he must tread upon his Heels.

This going upon his Toes, is remedied with good strong Stops, both upon his Walk, upon his Trot, and afterwards upon his Gallop; for that thrusts him upon his Heels, and his Legs under his Belly; and so makes him bow in the Houghs, and be upon the Hanches: Going back is also very good against this Vice, for it puts him upon the Hanches.

After a Horse is suppled of his outward Shoulder (which must be the first thing) there is none can be a ready Horse, but he must be upon the Hanches, and that must be with his Croup within; for the narrower Circle still subjects his Croup; but a Square subjects it most, with the inward

ward Rein and the outward Leg ; so the same helps with his Head to the Wall, either in Corvets or Terra a Terra ; for this subjects his Croup extreamly.

If you work Leg, and Rein on a side, there his Croup is out sufficiently, and then there's no obeying the Heel ; for here his fore-Parts are straitned, and subjected ; and his hinder-Parts enlarged, and lost.

If his Head be to the Pillar, the narrower Circle is still subject, which is his fore-Part, and his Croup the larger Circle, which is lost ; and there's no obeying the Heel, because his Croup is out.

But if you will work him to the Heel, to make him obey the Heel, his Croup must be in ; for there the narrower Circle is subjected, and prest, and the larger Circle at more liberty ; so that always his Croup in works him to the Heel, because it is the narrower Circle, though he be enlarged behind ; so there is no working him to the Heel, but his Croup in.

There is no Rule but hath some Exception, for his Head being to the Pillar, if you work with the inward Rein to the outward Shoulder, and the outward Leg, that works his Croup, though his Croup be out, because it subjects his hinder-Parts.

The

The inward Rein to your outward Shoulder, and outward Leg, always works and subjects his Hinder-parts, narrows him behind, and enlarges him before.



Of Bitts, and of the use of them.

THE Writers of Books, and the Horse-men now living, that think themselves wise, and great masters, by the diversity of Bitts, shew themselves full of ignorance, and simple People, to imagine, that a piece of Iron in a Horse's Mouth can bring him Knowledge; no more than a Book in a Boy's Hand can, at first, make him read; or, a pair of Spurs, planted on ignorant Heels, can make one ride well.

There is however, a propriety to fit every Horse, according to the turn of his Neck; shorter or longer, wider or narrower; the Mouth, the liberty, wider or narrower; the Eye longer or shorter; the Eye straight, or more bending; the Branches stronger, or weaker; the Curb equal; the Hooks according to the just measure of the Bitt; the Curb three good round Effes, with one Ring, where

where 'tis fastened; and two Rings, or Malions, where 'tis curbed, handsomely furnish'd with Bosses, not too big; richer, or poorer, according as you please: Not two rows of little Chains, tied to the Bitt, within his Mouth, only one at the most.

And this rule must ever be observ'd, to have as little Iron in your Horse's Mouth as possibly you can: If his Tongue be too big, the liberty must be the wider; if his Tongue be too little, the liberty the less; but you must take heed, that the Apuy, or resting place of the Bitt, be never made upon the liberty, for it will gaul him; but the Apuy must be made in the true place, where it ought to be, which is about one's little Finger's breadth beyond the liberty, on both sides of the Bitt; and the Bitt to be one's Finger's breadth above his Tusshes: The Branches are strong, when the Reins are slackt; those Branches that come back to his Neck most, are weak; those that go forward from his Neck, are strong; and good reason, for you have the greater pull.

You must measure with a little string, or a piece of a riding-rod, from the Eye of the Bitt, strait down; and if the Cheeks be within that line, they are weak;

weak ; and the more they are within that line, they are still the weaker : If the Cheeks be without that line, they are strong ; and the more they are without that line, they are the stronger.

You must consider another thing, which is, that the Cheeks are like a Lever, the longer it is, it hath the more force, and the shorter it is, the less force ; for a Boy, with a long Lever, will lift up more than the strongest Man, with a short Lever : And so in a Bitt, the longer the Cheeks are, they have the more force, and the shorter they are, the less force : For that which is the furthest from the centre, hath the most force for lifting or pulling ; and that which is nearest the centre, the least force : So every short Cheeks, make them as strong as you will, cannot have that force that longer Cheeks have.

If a Horse hold up his Head, and out, then they have shorter Branches, and stronger, to pull him down, and in ; wherein they are half right : So if a Horse holds his Head too low, and brings it in too round, so that he arms himself against the Bitt, which is, to rest the Branches upon his Breast, so that you have no pull, or command of him at all ;
because

because this Vice is contrary to holding up his Head, and out ; for which Vice they had shorter Cheeks, and stronger, to bring it in : So arming against the Bitt, being the contrary Vice, they think they must have the Bitt made contrary ; they must have a long one to put it up ; and since a strong Branch pull'd him down, they must have a weak Branch to put up his Head ; wherein they are mightily deceived : For when a Horse arms himself against the Bitt, certainly long Branches will sooner come to his Breast, than short ones ; and it is as certain, that a weak Branch will come sooner to his Breast, than a strong Branch ; therefore they are so much deceived.

As for a Horse that arms himself against the Bitt, you must have a short Branch that will not touch his Breast, and a strong Branch to keep it yet further from his Breast : The Hooks of the Curb ought to be made a little longer, and so just as not to hurt, or to offend the sides of his Cheeks ; and if the Curb do not lie in his right place, two little Iron Rings fastened close to the top of the Hooks, to keep them steady, and fast, is the best remedy ; all other devices in

in Bitts or Curbs, are idle and ignorant things.



The Bitts that follow are the best.

1. **A** Plain Canon, with Branches a la Connestable. 2. A plain Scatch, with Branches a la Connestable. 3. A Canon a la Pignatell; which is a gentle falling and moving up and down, and so low as not to hurt the Roof of the Horse's Mouth; which is the best, certainly, for all Horses that have Tongues, which I am sure they would not have prest; therefore I recommend that liberty above all things in Bitts, and the Branches a la Connestable.

To discharge a Horse's Lips, I would have Olives with the liberty a la Pignatell; those Olives coming short a little of the Bitt, with some little Rings, gives liberty for his Lips, and discharges them; and the Branches, a la Connestable.

But indeed, I would have but two sorts of Bitts, which is, 1. The Canon a la Pignatell. 2. And the Olives a la Pignatell, to discharge his Lips, if need

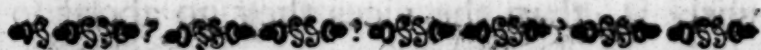
be ; but the Branches always a la Conne-
stable.

Thus you have the truth of Bitts brought into a narrow compass ; there is little in them to bring a Horse to understanding, on which we must work, and that is, his reason, by the favour of the Logicians Distinction of reasonable and unreasonable Creatures ; for were they as good Horsemen as Scholars, they would have made another distinction.

Well then, it is not a piece of Iron can make a Horse knowing ; if it were, a Bitt-maker would be the best Horseman. No ! It is the Art of appropriated Lessons ; fitting every Horse according to his nature, disposition, and strength ; punishing, and, with good Lessons, rectifying his Vices ; rewarding him, and preserving him in his Horse-virtues ; and not trusting to an ignorant piece of Iron call'd a Bitt : For, I will make a perfect Horse with a Cavezone without a Bitt, better than any man shall with his Bitt without a Cavezone ; so highly is the Cavezone, rightly used, to be esteemed ; for I had a *Barbe* at *Antwerp*, that went perfectly with the Cavezone without a Bitt, which was true art, and not the ignorance and folly of Bitts.

The

The famous *Pignatell* at *Naples*, never used but simple Bitts; which made the ignorant wonder how he could dress Horses so perfectly, with no more sorts of Bitts: But he told them, it was their ignorance made them wonder at his Art. And so that great Master, in this Art, *Monsieur de Pluvinel*, did the same: For, he had always a plain Cavezone, and not too sharp; and to make it gentler, did always line it with double Leather at the least; for a Horse, to wry his head, or suck up his Bitt, or put his Tongue over the Bitt, it never happens in my mannage, or method; because the liberty *A la Pignatell* hinders his Tongue from going over the Bitt; and working with the Cavezone, with truly slacking the Bitt, those things never happens, or do ever Horses put out their Tongues.



Of the Imperfections of a Horse's Mouth.

ALL our Writers in Horsemanship, the great Masters, in that profession, (as well old as modern) are mightily troubled and concerned, about the vices and imperfections of a Horse's Mouth.

As

As for Example ; the first, when a Horse pulls, and sucks up his Tongue : The second, when he puts his Tongue over the the Bitt : The third, when he doubles it about the Bitt : And the fourth, when he hangs his Tongue out of his Mouth, either forward, or of one side of his Mouth : For all, and every one of these vices, our great Doctors in Horsemanship, have taken a great deal of pains, with many curious devices, and many inventions, with Bitts, to cure them ; and take great pains, and much labour, about it ; so much, as their several writings, about these particular vices of the Mouth, would make a great Volume ; when the truth is, most of their Bitts, to remedy these imperfections, are much greater vices than those they would remedy ; and their physick the greatest disease, and brings more inconveniencies with it, than the vices they go about to cure.

The truth is, in short, I wish a Horse had none of those faults ; but put the case he hath, as putting out his Tongue, or putting his Tongue over the Bitt, or sucking or drawing of his Tongue up, or doubling of it : All these I wish were not ; but if they be, the Horse is not prejudiced

judiced at all by them, for he will have as good an Apuy with them, as without them; and will be as firm and steady of his Head, and as sensible of the Bars, and the Curb, as if those vices were not; for the Bitt rests, and works still, upon his Bars; and the Curb works in his due place, where it ought, in spite of his Tongue, let it be where it will, or not be; for when a Horse's Tongue is cut off, doth that hinder the Bitt, for working on the Bars, or the Curb, for working in his due place? Not at all: Nay, I have known a Horse's Tongue quite pull'd out by the Roots, and yet he went as well as ever he did in his life; so that is nothing; for the Bitt still works upon the Bars, and the Curb, where it ought: And a Horse with a Tongue, and put it where he will; or a Horse without a Tongue, is no hinderance to a Horse that hath a good Apuy, or is well settled on the Hand; no hinderance in the world: So that now you see, what vain curiosities, to no purpose, our great Masters have troubled themselves about, and puzzled many of their Readers, and tormented the poor Horses to boot, to no end in the world.

Excellent Names for Horses of Manpage.

ITALIAN and SPANISH

B ella Donna	Corfiere Neapolitano
Bell in Campo	Rubicano
Desperato	Signiore
Argentino	Delitia
Dorato	Nobilissimo
Gatto	Dolce
Gatino	Bona Natura
Rondinello	Bellissimo
Felice	Bonissimo
Lampo	Mille Fiore
Souza Speranza	Almenara
Capitano	Nuntio
Lupo	Dragone
Mahaumilia	Arogatille
Mala vesta	Diamante
Melancholia	Arrogante
Genette	Il Bravo
Cavallo Imperiale	Grandissimo
Emperatore	Illustrissimo

FRENCH

E lory	La Meruelle
Mignion	Le Miracle
Balott	Le Courran
Galliard	Le Fripon
Benit	Le Larron
Perle	Le Mechant
Rouffin	L'Emerillon
Sans Pareil	L'Admirable
La Perfection	Le Diligent
Le Delicat	Le Parangon
Isabelle d'Espagne	Le Loyall
Monsieur	Le Sensible
Le Hober	L'Enrage
Le Petit Barbe	Le Fougeux
Le Grand Barbe	Le Malitieux
Le Turc	L'Endormy
Le Petit Boutton	Le Contre Coeur
Le Superbe	L'Amour
Le Bouffon	La Maistrisse

FINIS.

